

PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

الصف الخامس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

2025

5th
PRIMARY FIVE
FIRST TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com





Contents

Part 1

- Punctuation
- Specification for Fifth Year Primary
- How to write a paragraph
- How to answer comprehension questions
- Let's remember

Part 2

Theme 1 I discover myself

- Unit 1 We plant our food
- Unit 2 I want to be healthy!
- Unit 3 How do I look?
- Review 1

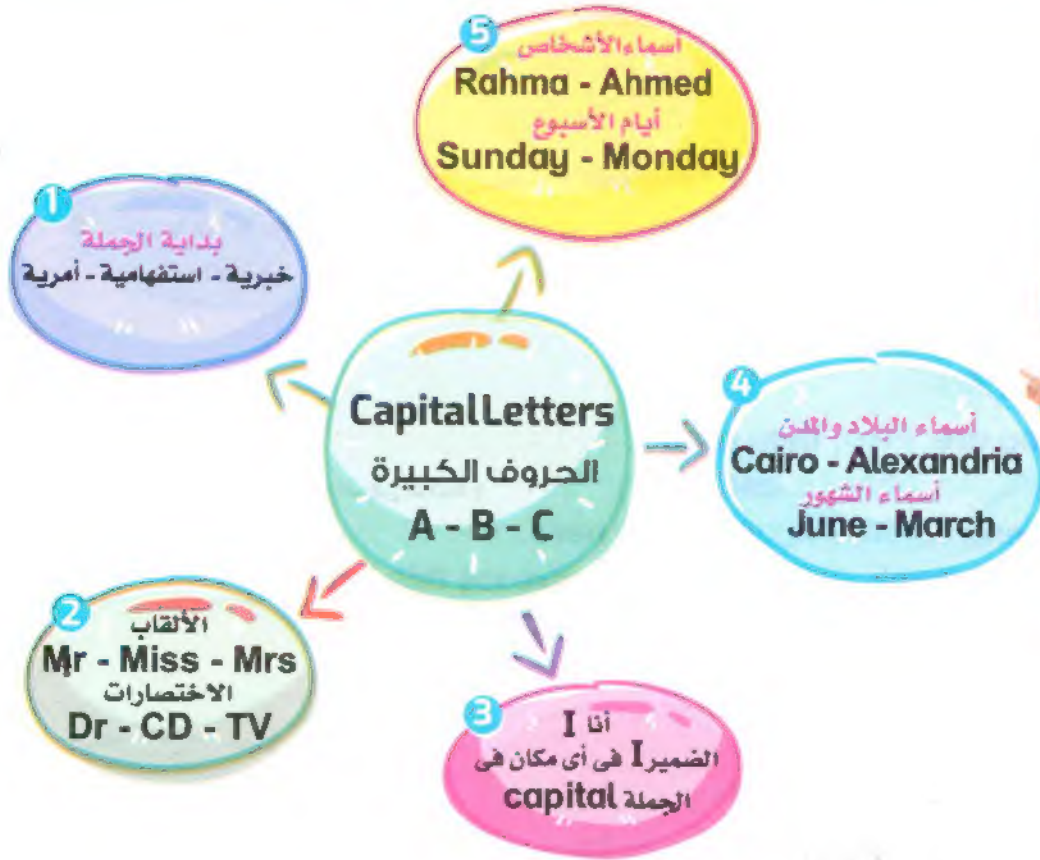
Theme 2 Myself and others

- Unit 4 Looking after our world
- Unit 5 Jobs we do
- Unit 6 What's the weather like?
- Review 2



Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



Examples:

1. **Y**asin is a vet. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your bag. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your umbrella? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some food. **I**'m hungry. (الضمير)
5. We visited **G**iza in **J**une. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. **M**r Osman plays football on **S**unday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

Revision



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, Eyad. / Eyad, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

- 1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
- 2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
- 3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
- 4. Hello! Mustafa. (علامة تعجب)

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Primary **5**
2024 - 2025

Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark and a half each)

B- Reading (14 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given.

The first sentence should be written in full. (One mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)

B: TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences.

(One mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

(One mark each)

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each is provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(Half a mark each)

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **THIRTY (30)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph
- Biography

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)



How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٣٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولاً ترتيب الجملة

1	2	3
فاعل	فعل	تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص Ahmed	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is going / go / goes	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال home / yesterday happy / well
مكان School	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was doing / did	
شيء Car		

ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

She is happy.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

Ahmed is a teacher.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

He went to school.

زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We play on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

I love him.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٣٠ كلمة عن:

Healthy food

Guiding phrases

healthy meals - rice for lunch

I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. I love eating them very much. They are delicious, too.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية و ما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Last week, my father bought me a new **watch**. **It's blue and brown**. **It helps me learn about the time**.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد

يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى

- The underlined word "....." refers to

ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) للنص أو لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة أو أكثر

بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the text / the first / the second / the third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص نص أو فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها.

2- حدد أهم شيء يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن

استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية .

4- اكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.



أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in a sentence.

I went to Giza last winter. I went with my friends. We saw the Pyramids and rode camels. We had a great time.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسي بمدينة **Giza**.

٢- أهم ما يخصك هو الذهاب إلى الجيزة. وماذا فعلت هناك والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **went / saw / rode**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

I went to Giza, saw the Pyramids and rode camels.

2- Summarize the text in two sentences of your own words.

My favorite sport is football. I play football in the club. I go to the club every day. I practice a lot. There are two teams in football. Each team tries to win the match.

١- أهم شيء **football**

٢- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٣- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My favorite sport is football. There are the two teams and each team tries to win the match.

Let's remember!

1 Unjumble the letters to make words:

اعد ترتيب الحروف لكتابة الكلمات:

1



lcel ehopn

2



emtor

3



lpouointt

4



aspsdowr

5



tbao

6



atxi

7



odruhtg

8



mart

9



od eracshe

10



artfcif

11



lfodo

12



etxt smeagse

2 Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words:

اكمل الجدول بكلمات تمرين ١. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل الكلمات:



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

Social media	Transportation	Environment
password	metro	pollution

1. Complete the crossword puzzle with the words you remember.

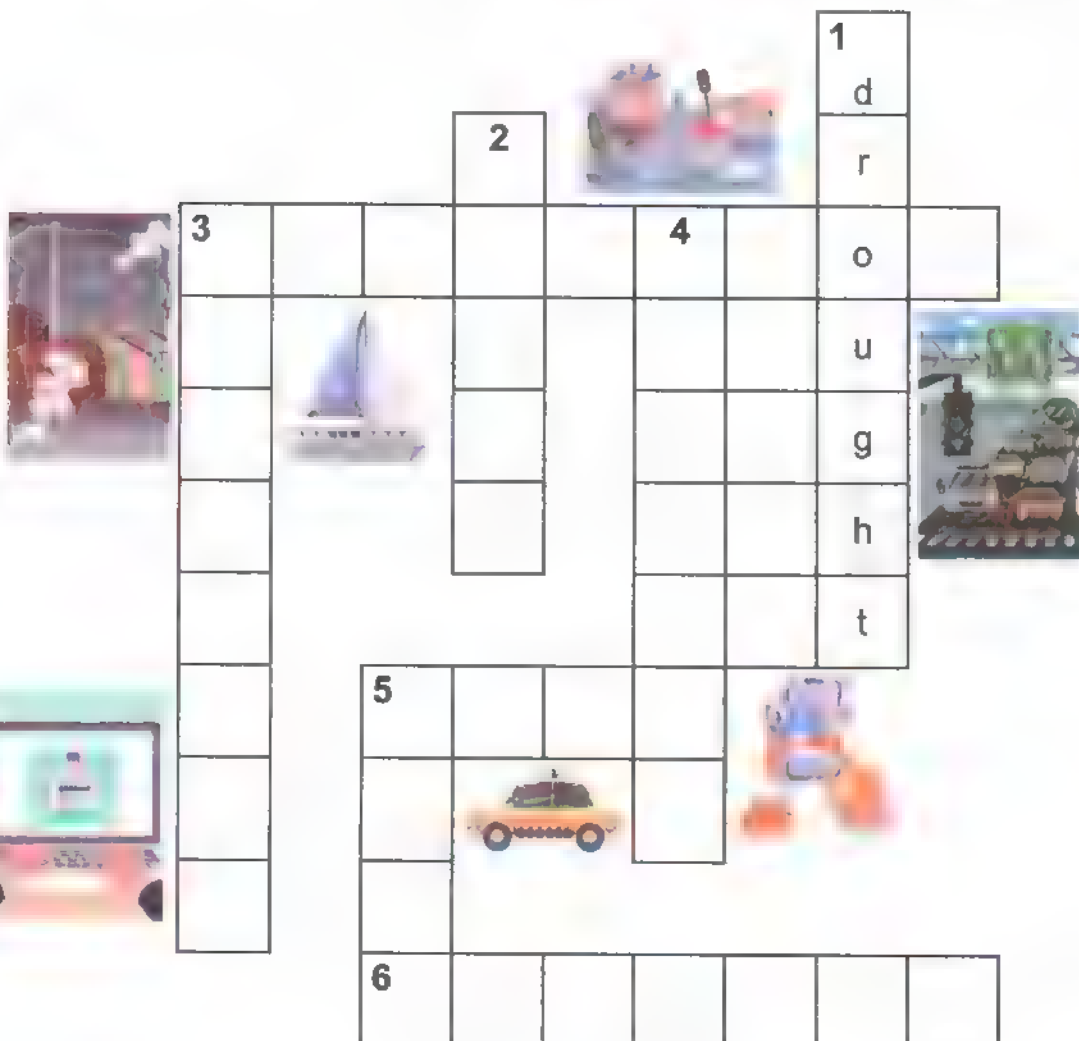
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بكلمات من تمرين ١

Down

1. When there isn't enough water.
2. When there's too much water.
3. The special code you need to access your computer.
4. Lots of cars on the road.
5. Public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train.

Across

3. When there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air.
5. A car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives.
6. A small note you write to someone on your cell phone.



Let's remember!

4

اكتب ثلاث جمل عن وسيلة المواصلات المفضلة لديك. تكلم عن أسباب حبك لها. هل هي مفيدة أم ضارة بالبيئة؟

My favorite transportation is

.....

.....

.....

5

اكتب صيغة الماضي البسيط للأفعال بالأسفل. ثم ضع علامة ✓ امام الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

1. is	was	✓	2. play	played	
3. swim			4. see		
5. walk			6. study		
7. have			8. help		
9. do			10. go		

6

Complete the text with the past simple form of the verbs in the box.

اكمل النص بأفعال في الماضي البسيط من تمرين 5.

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They ① had a nice weekend. They ② played football together in the park on Friday morning. Then, Lama ③ asked her mom to clean the house. And Maged ④ went with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they ⑤ saw a movie. It ⑥ was very good. Maged ⑦ walked to the beach along the coast path and ⑧ swam in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening, Maged ⑨ did for a test and Lama ⑩ checked her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

Work with a partner. Answer the questions:

اشترك مع زميلك. اجب عن الأسئلة.

1. Did Maged and Lama like their weekend? Why / Why not?
2. Who helped mom?
3. Who went swimming with dad?
4. Who went to the zoo?

8

ضع دائرة حول الفعل الصحيح في الجمل.

1. You **should** / **can** get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.
2. We **must** / **can't** plant more trees to get fresher air.
3. Wael **should** / **shouldn't** give his password to his friends.
4. Dina **can** / **needs** to buy another pen to do her homework.
5. Dalia **should** / **can't** put on her seat belt.
6. You **mustn't** / **need** to look right and left before you cross the road.

9

تلعب ألعاب كمبيوتر مع أصدقائك. اكمل الجدول بالمميزات والعيوب من الإطار ثم صف فكرتين من عندك.

lots of fun - wastes time - helps us think about solutions

- some games don't teach us anything - we can learn from some of them

Playing a computer game

Pros مميزات		Cons عيوب
lots of fun		wastes time

Let's remember!

10

Complete the paragraph, using the words in the box:

أكمل العبارات عن كتابة المميزات والعيوب بكلمات من الأطار كالمثال:

also - general / conclusion - opinion - other hand - think

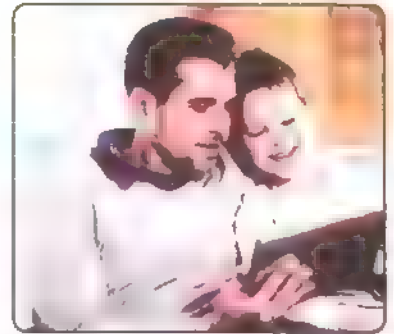
1. Many people **think** that tablets are small and light.

2. They _____.

3. But, on the _____.

4. In _____.

5. In my _____.



11

Write a paragraph using the phrases in Exercise 10.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية باستخدام العبارات بتمرين ١٠:

Many people **think** that tablets are small and light.

_____. They also say _____.

_____.

But, on the other hand, they think that tablets have small screens.

_____.

In general, _____.

In my opinion, _____.

I discover myself

We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثاً ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.
2. Listen to a conversation about favorite food.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة حول الطعام المفضل.
3. Practice making suggestions with **how about**.
- يتدرب الطالب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام ماذا عن.
4. Read a fairy tale.
- يقرأ الطالب قصة خيالية.
5. Practice saying vowel sounds.
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.
6. Understand decimal fractions.
- يفهم الطالب الكسور العشرية.
7. Write a recipe.
- يكتب الطالب وصفة طعام.
8. Research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.
- يجري الطالب بحثاً ويعمل ملصق عن الفاكهة والخضراوات التي تنمو في مصر.

Food and drink

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



شيكولاتة



carrots

جزر



بيض



limes

ليمون أخضر



lemons

ليمون أصفر



pineapples

أناناس



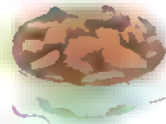
coconuts

جوز الهند



onions

بصل



beans

فول

فوائد صحية

favorite
easy
healthy
unhealthy
chicken
fish

مفضل
سهل
صحي
غير صحي
دجاجة/ لحم دجاج
سمكة/ لحم سمك

mango
garden
potatoes
fresh
market

ثمرة مانجو
حديقة
بطاطس
طازج
سوق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
love	يحب	loved		have / has	يملك	had	
collect	يجمع	collected		eat	يأكل	ate	
				grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	
				sell	يبيع	sold	

Study the following

- What's your favorite food? - ما هو طعامك المفضل؟
- I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it? - أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟
- I think it's OK to eat a little. - أعتقد أنه لا بأس من تناول القليل منها.
- It is unhealthy if you eat a lot. - من غير الصحي تناول الكثير منها.
- We have a mango tree in the garden. - لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.
- We have a lime tree and a lemon tree. - لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر و شجرة ليمون أصفر.
- My uncle grows onions and potatoes. - يزرع عمي البصل و البطاطس.
- He collects fresh eggs every day. - يجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم.
- Sometimes he sells them at the market. - يبيعه في بعض الأحيان في السوق.
- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground. - لا تنمو ثمار الأناناس على الأشجار. إنها تنمو على الأرض.



We plant our food

استمع للنص الأول. هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشيكولاتة طعام صحي؟

Tapescript



النص الاستماع

Dina What's your favorite food, Fareeda?

Fareeda: That's easy! It's chocolate.

استمع إلى النص



Dina : Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

Fareeda: I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

Dina : What's your favorite healthy food?

Fareeda: Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

Dina : I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

Fareeda: My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.



استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بصح أو خطأ وصحح الجمل الخطأ.

- 1- Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate.
- 2- Dina doesn't like chocolate.
- 3- Fareeda's favorite healthy food is fish.
- 4- Fareeda has a mango tree in her garden.

T

3 Do you grow fruit at home? Say.

هل تزرع فاكهة في المنزل؟ قل.



We grow mangoes in our garden!

هل تعلم؟

- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



- My uncle grows in his field.
☐ a lemons and carrots ☐ b apples and oranges
☐ c limes and beans ☐ d onions and tomatoes
- My uncle gets fresh from chickens.
☐ a meat ☐ b eggs ☐ c legs ☐ d milk
- My uncle sells some eggs at the
☐ a shop ☐ b beach ☐ c market ☐ d garden
- My uncle gets a lot of at the market.
☐ a money ☐ b chickens ☐ c tomatoes ☐ d onions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We can buy and sell things at the
☐ a market ☐ b zoo ☐ c hotel ☐ d school
(2020) نيس - سميث - اختارة لانس
- My father planted a lemon tree in our
☐ a office ☐ b room ☐ c garden ☐ d library
(2024) نيس - سميث - اختارة لانس
- We grow in our garden.
☐ a limes ☐ b chickens ☐ c eggs ☐ d chocolate
(2024) نيس - سميث - اختارة لانس
- Farmers eggs from chickens.
☐ a put ☐ b collect ☐ c grow ☐ d play
- Pineapples grow on the
☐ a sky ☐ b flower ☐ c ground ☐ d cloud
- It's OK to eat a of chocolate.
☐ a more ☐ b little ☐ c much ☐ d many
- Eating a lot of chocolate is
☐ a unhealthy ☐ b fresh ☐ c good ☐ d favorite



We plant our food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - little - chicken - grow - healthy

I love chocolate, but it's unhealthy. We should eat a ❶ _____. My brother like healthy food. He likes ❷ _____ and fish. Fruits and vegetables are ❸ _____. I love mangoes. We can ❹ _____ a mango tree in our garden.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. food - What's - favorite - your? _____
2. don't - trees - Pineapples - on - grow. _____
3. and - My - onions - grows - uncle - potatoes. _____
4. a mango tree - garden - the - We - in - have. _____

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1- do you grow fruit _____
- 2- dina doesn't like chocolate - - - _____

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

- 1- What's your favorite fruit?
- 2- Are mangoes healthy or unhealthy?



Lesson

Part 1

My shopping list

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



bananas موز



chicken لحم دجاج



nuts مكسرات



mangoes مانجو



watermelons بطيخ



cookies كعك محلي



koshari كشرى



tomatoes طماطم



أرز

Other words

كلمات أخرى

shopping list

قائمة مشتريات

boiled egg

بيض مسلوق

How about....?

ماذا عن...؟

yogurt

زبادى

How much?

كم سعر؟

fruit salad

سلطة فواكه

a good price

سعر جيد/ مناسب

fried eggs

بيض مقلى

juicy

كثير العصارة

burger

برجر

in total

إجمالاً

french fries

بطاطس مقليه

lucky

محظوظ

cucumber

خيار

malhalabia

مهلية

jam

مرعى

of course

بالتأكيد

honey

عسل

fridge

ثلاجة

a balanced diet

نظام غذائى متوازن

dessert

طعام التحلية

nutrients

عناصر غذائية

grapes

عنب

shawerma

شاورما

ful medames

فول مدمس



We plant our food

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

visit يزور

visited

come يأتي

came

unpack يفرغ

unpacked

buy يشتري

bought

think يفكر

thought



How about + V + ing.....?

=How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

=Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

1

للاقتراح
نستخدم:

What would you like?

للسؤال بمعنى ماذا تريد نستخدم:

- I would like some carrots, please.

- Would you like an orange?

- Yes, please.

- No, thanks.

وللاجابة:

2

لطلب
الطعام:

للسؤال بمعنى هل تريد:

للموافقة:

لرفض:

3

للسؤال بمعنى
هل يوجد؟

Are there + اسم جمع....?

Is there + اسم لا يعد / اسم مفرد + اسم مفرد....?

- Are there any apples?

- Yes, there are. إجابة في الإثبات.

- No, there aren't. إجابة في النفي.

- Is there any milk?

- Yes, there is. إجابة في الإثبات.

- No, there isn't. إجابة في النفي.





Study the following

- 1 What would you like? - ماذا تريد؟
- 2 I would like some carrots please. أريد بعض الجزر، من فضلك.
- 3 Are there any tomatoes? - هل هناك أي طماطم؟
- 4 How about buying some lemons and pineapples too? - ماذا عن شراء بعض الليمون والأناناس أيضًا؟
- 5 That's all I need for now. - هذا كل ما أحتاجه الآن.
- 6 I would like some potatoes and some onions please. - أريد بعض البطاطس وبعض البصل، من فضلك.
- 7 Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs. تأكد من تناول نظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.
- 8 Why is it important to eat healthy food? لماذا من المهم تناول طعام صحي؟
- 9 How do you make sensible food choices? كيف تتخذ خيارات غذائية معقولة؟

1

استمع للنص الأتي واكتب الأسماء:

Amal - Nada - Ibrahim - Ashraf

1



2

SHOPPING LIST



3



4



Transcript

استمع إلى النص:



Narrator 1:

Market trader: (1) tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

Mom: Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

Market trader: They're a good (2); they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

١- جميل

٢- سعر



We plant our food

Mom : OK. We will have a kilogram, please.

Market trader : How about buying some carrots too?

Mom : No, thank you.

Ibrahim : Mom, please can we have a pineapple?

Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice ⁽³⁾ pineapple.

Market trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

Narrator 2:

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

٣- كثير العصرة

Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.

٤- محظوظ

Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

٥- مهلبية

٦- ثلاجة

٧- قائمة

Grandma : I know. I'm ⁽⁴⁾ lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?

٨- حتى

Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut ⁽⁵⁾ mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

Narrator 3:

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the ⁽⁶⁾ fridge?

Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

Narrator 4

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?

Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.

Dad : Here are the lemons.

Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

Dad : Is it on Mom's ⁽⁷⁾ list?

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

Dad : OK, but don't eat it ⁽⁸⁾ until after dinner, Amal!



2 Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى. اكمل الجمل بالكلمات من الإطار:

chocolate - koshari - mahalabia - mango - onions - pineapple - tomatoes

- 1- Ibrahim and his mom buy _____ and a _____.
- 2- Nada doesn't have a _____ tree in her garden.
- 3- Nada wants _____ for dessert.
- 4- Ashraf and his mom need to buy bread, rice, and _____.
- 5- Ashraf wants _____ for lunch.
- 6- _____ is not on Amal's mom's list.

3 Listen and check (✓) the things you need to buy.

استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الأشياء التي لدى جنى ووالدتها:



استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Jana, can you help me **unpack⁽¹⁾** the bags, please?

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

Arabic Meaning:
 ١- يفرغ
 ٢- حراة
 ٣- طبق فاكهة
 ٤- اللبلة

Mom : Put that in the **cupboard⁽²⁾**, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

Jana : OK. I'll put the bananas in the **fruit bowl⁽³⁾** on the table.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert **tonight⁽⁴⁾**? I bought a bag of nuts.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!





We plant our food



Rank the food items from (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest):

اقرأ الوجبات اليومية ورتبهم من ١ (أكثر الأطعمة صحية) إلى ٣ (أكثر الأطعمة غير الصحية).

a

Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad

Breakfast: 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese

b

Lunch: burger and french fries

Dinner: pizza

Breakfast: cheese and bread, cucumber, jam

c

Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice

Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake



- Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

تأكد أنك تتناول نظام غذائي صحي حتى يحصل جسدك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.



My shopping list

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns أسماء يمكن عدّها
Uncountable nouns أسماء لا يمكن عدّها

أولاً: الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها Countable nouns

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها **a / an** أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة **a / an**

a / an

نستخدم (**a**) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن وتعني واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- **a banana** موزة

a lemon ليمونة

- نستخدم (**an**) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك وتعني واحدة من هذا الاسم.

- الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- **an orange**

an apple

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s **es** **ies** **ves** جمع شاذ

- كيف نكون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

إما بإضافة آخر الاسم: **book - books**

- أو بإضافة **es** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←

bus → **buses** **beach** → **beaches**
tomato → **tomatoes** **glass** → **glasses**

أو بإضافة (**y**) إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (**y**) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (**y**).

إذا سبق حرف (**y**) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

+ حرف ساكن
(**cand**)

y **ies**
cand es

+ حرف متحرك
(**bo**)

ys
(**bo ys**)



We plant our food

- أو بإضافة **es** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ **f / fe** حيث تحذف كما يلي:

knife → knives

leaf → leaves

- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse	→	mice	foot	→	feet
man	→	men	woman	→	women
child	→	children	tooth	→	teeth

ثانيًا : الأسماء التي لا تعد Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water || rice || milk / chocolate / yogurt || jam / honey || soup || bread
koshari / mahalabia

some / any

- نستخدم كلمة **some** بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد **some** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like **some** apples, please.

- I would like **some** rice, please.

- ونستخدم **any** بمعنى (أى) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال. ويأتي بعد **any** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Are there **any** tomatoes?

- We **haven't** got **any** grapes.

A lot of / lots of

- يأتي بعد **a lot of / lots of** إما اسم جمع أو اسم مفرد لا يعد.

- I bought **a lot of** apples.

- I ate **lots of** rice.





انظروا قراءاً،

1 Look and read:

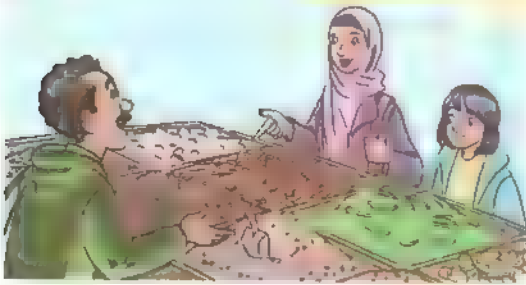
استمع إلى النص:



Hello, what would you like?

I would like some carrots, please.

1



Are there any tomatoes?

Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.

2



Would you like some oranges?

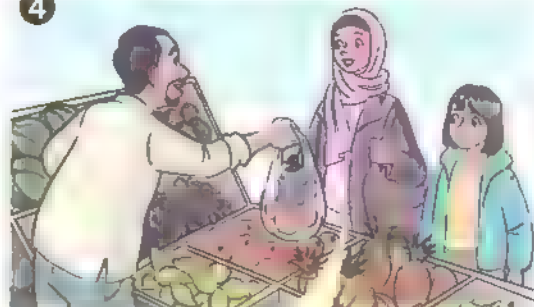
Yes, of course

3



How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too?

4



Yes, please. Can I have some grapes, too?

No, thanks. That's all I need for now.

le the correct words:

انظروا وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Are there any **tomato** / **tomatoes**?
2. I would like **some** / **any** eggs, please.
3. Please, can I have **a** / **an** apple?
4. I would like **a** / **an** pineapple and **a** / **an** orange.
5. Do you have **a** / **any** carrots, please?
6. How about **buy** / **buying** an apple, Mom?
7. How about buying some **grapes** / **grape**?





Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Omar's family was at home today.
☐ a angry ☐ b busy ☐ c unhappy ☐ d healthy
- They ate in the morning.
☐ a koshari ☐ b cake ☐ c ful medames ☐ d burger
- In the, they ate french fries.
☐ a evening ☐ b morning ☐ c afternoon ☐ d summer
- They watched TV after
☐ a lunch ☐ b breakfast ☐ c dinner ☐ d snack

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Lana wants chocolate for
☐ a desert ☐ b dessert ☐ c dress ☐ d drums
- A: How much are the tomatoes? B: They're a good
☐ a prize ☐ b price ☐ c market ☐ d tree
- She went to the to buy some vegetables.
☐ a restaurant ☐ b park ☐ c beach ☐ d market
- I love watermelons because they are always
☐ a salty ☐ b juicy ☐ c bad ☐ d unhealthy
- Mom always writes a of things she needs from the market.
☐ a list ☐ b book ☐ c menu ☐ d letter
- Fatma helps her mom the bags.
☐ a unpack ☐ b unhappy ☐ c cook ☐ d burn

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Jana. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger and vegetables for lunch. My sister always helps my mom in the kitchen.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Jana's sister has for breakfast.
☐ a burger ☐ b fried eggs ☐ c yogurt ☐ d pizza

2. The underlined phrase "get up" means

a wake up

b sleep

c run

d eat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Jana go in the afternoon?

4. Who always helps mom in the kitchen?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. would - What - like - you?

2. there - tomatoes - Are - any?

3. some - , please - would - like - I - carrots.

4. some - about - lemons - How - buying?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1 I want (an) pineapple.

2 I would like (any) rice, please.

3 There is (a) water on the floor.

4 I eat (a) apple every day.

5. (Is) there any mangoes on the tree?

6 I (am) like some bananas, please.

7. How about (eats) healthy food?

8. Amal doesn't have (some) onions.

9. Are there any (grape) ?

10. I would like (any) bread.

11. Do you have (some) potatoes?

12. Is there (some) juice in the fridge?

مستخدومة - إدارة وسط (2024)

مستخدومة - أدر - لغز (2024)

الدفعية - إدارة ركس (2024)

(2024)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. no thanks.

2. would you like some juice, Amir

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- eat lots of fruit - chocolate for dessert

مجاو آخر الوحدة



Lesson 3

Jack and the Beanstalk



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



beanstalk ساق الفاصوليا



castle قلعة



giant عملاق



chop يقطع



cage قفص



grab ينتزع / يمسك

ADJECTIVES



poor	فقير
rich	غني
special	خاص / مميز
angry	غاضب
golden	ذهبي

magic	سحر / سحري
terrible	فظيع
free	حر / طليق
kind	عطوف

Other words



market	سوق	inside	بالداخل
cow	بقرة	suddenly	فجأة
price	سعر	gold coins	عملات ذهبية
on the way to	في الطريق إلى	as soon as	بمجرد
cloud	سحابة	axe	فأس
go to bed	ينام	anymore	لم يعد
top	قمة		

Conjugation of verbs

مضارع / ماضٍ

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
climb يتسلق	climbe	sell يبيع	sold
count يعد	counted	say يقول	said
cry يصيح / يصرخ	cried	get يحصل على	got
save يقد	saved	meet يقابل	met
reach يصل إلى	reached	buy يشتري	bought
grab يمسك بـ / يترع	grabbed	throw يرمي	threw
chop يقطع	chopped	see يرى	saw
		fall يسقط	fell

البنية

giant عملاق	a very, very big person
grab يمسك بـ / يترع	to pick something up quickly
castle قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago
chop يقطع	to cut something down
cage قفس	a box in which we keep animals

Study the following

- 1 Jack and his mother were very poor. كان جاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية.
- 2 On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. - التقى جاك برجل عجوز في الطريق إلى السوق.
- 3 I have these special beans. لدي هذه الفاصوليا المميزة.
- 4 They will make you rich! سوف تجعلك غنيا!
- 5 He was sad and very hungry. كان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.
- 6 The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. - في صباح اليوم التالي، رأى جاك شجرة (ساق) فاصوليا طويلة جدًا في الحديقة.
- 7 At the very top, he saw a castle. رأى قلعة في القمة.
- 8 Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. - فجأة، رأى جاك عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا.



- 9 He was counting bags of gold coins. - كان يعد أكياس عملات ذهبية.
- 10 As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe - بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته ، أمسك بفأسه.
- 11 The giant fell on the ground and ran away - سقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب.
- 12 Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. - لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء بعد الآن.
- 13 They sold the golden eggs to buy food. - باعوا البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام.
- 14 Jack and his mother lived happily ever after - عاش جاك ووالدته في سعادة دائمة.



Listen and read. What did Jack get for his cow?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا حصل جاك مقابل بيع بقرته؟

استمع إلى النص:



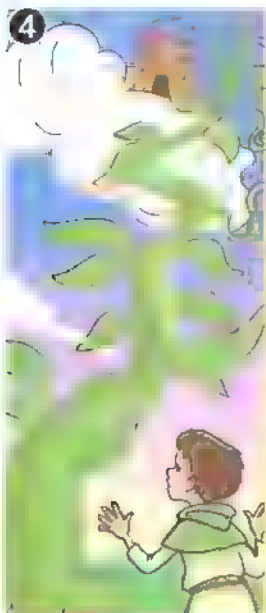
Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.



4 The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a **castle**. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.



5 Suddenly, Jack saw a very big **giant**. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a **cage**. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.



6 The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!". "I'll help you!" said Jack.



7 As soon as Jack reached his garden, he **grabbed** his axe. He **chopped** down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!



8 "Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

Unit 1

We plant our food

1 Read and match the words in bold. Match them to their meanings.

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط عريض. صلها بمعانيها.

- 1 giant
- 2 grab
- 3 castle
- 4 chop
- 5 cage

- a very large building built a long time ago
- b. to cut something down
- a box in which we keep animals
- a very, very big person
- to pick something up quickly

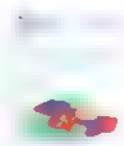
Pronunciation

Short vowels

Short a / æ /



cat قطه



candy حلوى



mango مانجو

Long vowels

Long a [a-e / ai / ay] /eɪ/



cake تورتة



grape حبة عنب



snake ثعبان



bake يخبز



snail حلزون



rain مطر



tail ذيل



pain ألم



gray رمادي



play يلعب

say يقول

stay يبقى / يقيم



Short e / e /



egg بيضة



bread خبز

Long e [ee - ea] /i:/



bean حبة فول



meat لحم

Short i / I /



milk لبن



fish سمك

Long i [i-e - igh] /ai/



lime ليمون أخضر



rice أرز

Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

cake

a e

snake

rain

ai

pain

gray

ay

stay

ملاحظة

- هناك كلمات تشترك في أحد الأصوات وتختلف في الحروف:

cake → bake

rain → pain

snail → tail

bean → meat

gray → stay

انظر واكتب:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1



c a ke

2



l _me

3



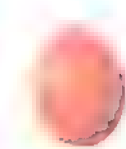
b _ _n

4



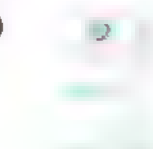
gr_pe

5



_gg

6



m_lk

7



r_ce

8



c_ndy



We plant our food



Put the words in the correct column.

- | | | |
|-----------------|------|-------|
| 1. <u>grape</u> | egg | bread |
| 2. mango | egg | candy |
| 3. fish | meat | bean |
| 4. lime | rice | cake |

قل ثم ضع دائرة على الكلمة المختلفة (في النطق):



Read the sentences and complete them.

اقرأ ثم استمع واكمل:

- I s _ _ , 'Let's pl _ _ !'
- Let's b _ ke a c _ ke.
- Sn _ _ ls have t _ _ ls.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

استمع إلى النص:

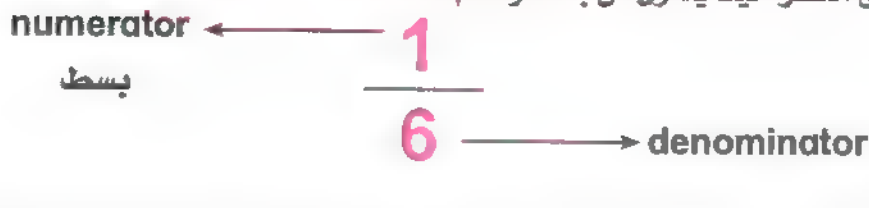


MATH

Decimal Fractions

الكسور العشرية

- درسنا فيما سبق الكسر حيث يتكون من بسط ومقام.



- إذا كان لدينا 4 تفاحات ونريد تقسيمها على ولدان (2) فإن رقم (4) هو البسط ورقم (2) هو المقام.

$$2 = \frac{4}{2} \text{ إذا نصيب كل ولد 2 تفاحة وهذا عدد صحيح.}$$

- لكن إذا كان لدينا تفاحتين (2) وأردنا قسمتهما على (4) أولاد:-

$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} \text{ أي أن نصيب كل ولد نصف تفاحة وهذا يمثل كسر وليس عدد صحيح.}$$

- أما الكسر العشري فيبدأ برقم ثم علامة عشرية ثم باقي الرقم (32.50 / 1.70 / 0.40 / 0.30)



Look, read, and remember decimal fractions:

انظر واقرأ وتذكر الكسور العشرية:

- يمكن كتابة الكسر على شكل كسر عشري كما يلي:

$$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$$

$$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$$

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$$

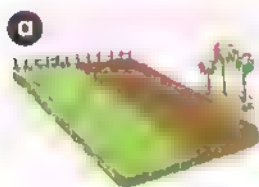
$$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$$

$$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$$



2 Look, read and write the fractions:

انظر واقرأ واكتب الكسور:



Amir: $\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$



1 Walaa planted $\frac{1}{3}$ of her field.

2 Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.

3 Tarek planted $\frac{1}{4}$ of his field.

4 Lubna planted $\frac{1}{5}$ of her field.

5 Sherif planted $\frac{3}{4}$ of his field.

6 Manar planted $\frac{2}{5}$ of her field.

3 Think and write:

فكر واكتب:

$0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400$

1 $\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$

2 $\frac{1}{2} = \quad = \quad$

3 $\frac{1}{4} = \quad = \quad$

4 $\frac{1}{5} = \quad = \quad$

5 $\frac{3}{4} = \quad = \quad$

6 $\frac{2}{5} = \quad = \quad$





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A is a very big person. (الإسمودية، أدارة الهندسة (2024))
 a giant b poor c rich d small
2. When you something, you pick it up quickly. (2024)
 a chop b grab c plant d grow
3. Ali is very He has a lot of money. (2024)
 a poor b clever c rich d bad
4. My favorite fruit is (2024)
 a fish b potatoes c grapes d candy
5. Dogs and cats have
 a beaks b tails c feathers d eggs
6. Let's a cake.
 a climb b cry c grab d bake
7. I always help my mother the vegetables.
 a climb b meet c chop d talk
8. A is a very large building built a long time ago.
 a castle b car c tree d cage

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rich - cage - poor - giant - angry

Jack and his mother didn't have money. They were ① Jack saw a very big ② He also saw a hen in the ③ Next to the hen was a golden egg. Jack took the hen and sold the golden eggs. Jack became ④ at the end.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, Samy went to the library to read books. He borrowed a book about a famous rich man called Jack. When Jack was a child, he was poor. His mother

gave him a cow to sell it and get money to buy food. He met an old man and gave him bean seeds. Jack put the bean seeds in his garden. The next day, he found a very tall beanstalk. He climbed the beanstalk and found a hen with golden eggs. He took it and sold the eggs, then he became very rich.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Jack found a _____ on the beanstalk.
☐ a dog ☐ b cat ☐ c hen ☐ d bag
- Jack put the bean seeds in the _____.
☐ a library ☐ b garden ☐ c market ☐ d beanstalk

B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did Samy go yesterday? _____
- How did Jack become rich? _____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- wanted - sell - Jack - cow - to - the.

- saw - Jack - giant - big - a very

- his mother - were - Jack - very - and - poor.

- was counting - gold - He - coins - bags - of.

- the golden - They - eggs - sold - food - to buy.

مبسوة - اذيرة طود (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- let s play.

- What did jack get for his cow



Lesson

Writing

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



ملوخية



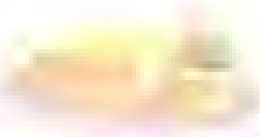
يزن المقادير



يخلط



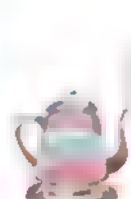
يصب/يسكب



butter زبد



bake يخبز



boil يغلي



يقطع

Other words

كلمات أخرى

basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	شراب (سائل محلى)
recipe	وصفة طعام	a tablespoon = tbsp	ملعقة طعام
ingredients	مكونات الطعام	lentil soup	حساء عدس
semolina	سميد	oven	فرن
yogurt	ذبادى	by hand	باليد
sugar	سكر	mixture	خليط
melted butter	زبدة مذابة	knife	سكين
baking powder	مسحوق الخبز	diamond shape	شكل ماسى (معين)
coconut	جوز هند	pretty	جميل
almonds	لوز	lemon juice	عصير ليمون
teaspoon = tsp	ملعقة شاي	saucepan	طاسة
such as	مثل	mintue	دقيقة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
cook يطهو	cooked
bake يخبز	baked
turn on يشغل	turned on
weigh out يزن المقادير	weighed out
mix يخلط	mixed
add يضيف	added
pour يصب / يسكب	poured
boil يغلي	boiled
share يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
put يضع	put
make يصنع / يعد طعام	made
take out يخرج	took out
cut يقطع	cut

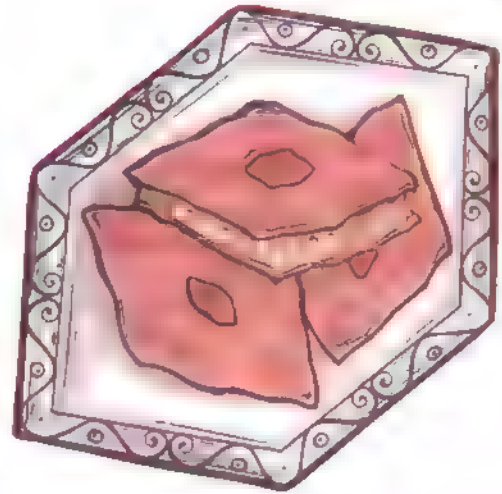
Study the following

- 1 What is the recipe for? - لأي طعام هذه الوصفة ؟
- 2 My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. - أفضل شيء أحب خبزه هو البسبوسة.
- 3 First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. - أولاً ، تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه.
- 4 You should mix these ingredients by hand. - يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد.
- 5 Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. - ثم تضيف الزبادي وتسكب الخليط في طبق للخبز.
- 6 You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. - يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل أشكال على شكل (معين) فوق البسبوسة.
- 7 Put an almond on each diamond. - ضع حبة لوز على كل شكل ماسة (معين).
- 8 Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. - اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة 30 دقيقة.
- 9 Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. - اغلي الخليط لمدة 10 دقائق.
- 10 Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. - ثم نصب الشراب على البسبوسة.
- 11 Cut the basbousa and share it with your family! - قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك!



انظروا اقرأ لأي طعام هذه الوصفة؟

استمع إلى النص:

**INGREDIENTS**

2 cups semolina

1 cup yogurt

 $\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar $\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter

1 tsp baking powder

1 cup coconut

almonds

Syrup

 $\frac{3}{4}$ cup water

2 tbsp honey

My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot.

Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa.

Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan.

Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!



Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Hala went to the kitchen to a cake.
☐ a buy ☐ b make ☐ c do ☐ d write
- We use a to cut vegetables.
☐ a spoon ☐ b cage ☐ c glass ☐ d knife
- I want to basbousa.
☐ a bake ☐ b boil ☐ c turn on ☐ d plant
- Mona out the ingredients. They were one kilogram.
☐ a boiled ☐ b cut ☐ c weighed ☐ d baked
- If you two colors, you get a new one.
☐ a boil ☐ b weigh ☐ c mix ☐ d cut
- We syrup over the basbousa. (2024)
☐ a bake ☐ b cut ☐ c pour ☐ d chop

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

oven - delicious - ingredients - spicy - hand

(2024)

My favorite recipe is basbousa. Mum buys the ① from the supermarket. She mixes these ingredients by ② Then, she bakes the basbousa in the ③ for 30 minutes. She makes the syrup for 10 minutes. Finally, she pours the syrup over the basbousa. It is very ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Nour. I'm twelve years old. I have one brother and one sister. Last Friday was my mom's birthday. My sister, my brother and I made her a nice cake. We used flour, milk, butter, sugar, eggs and chocolate. First, we mixed the ingredients well by hand. Next, we poured the mixture into a baking dish. After that, we baked it in the oven for 30 minutes. Finally, we cut it in different shapes. It was delicious. Mom was very happy. All the family liked it. (2024)





We plant our food

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mom's birthday was

- ☐ a today ☐ b yesterday ☐ c last Friday ☐ d tomorrow

2. They didn't use in making the cake.

- ☐ a butter ☐ b syrup ☐ c flour ☐ d eggs

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How long did they take to bake the cake?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. ingredients - the - Mix - hand - by.

2. your - on - hot - in - oven - to get - it.

3. almond - is - diamond - on each - an.

4. the mixture - for - minutes - 5 - about - 10.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- what is the recipe for, Fatma

2- we cook lentil soup, ful medames and molokhia



Review



Food

الطعام



chocolate
شيكولاتة



carrots
جزر



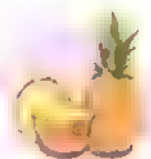
lemons
ليمون أصفر



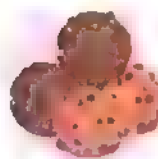
limes
ليمون أخضر



beans
فول



pineapples
أناناس



cookies
كعك محلى



coconuts
جوز الهند



onions
بصل



watermelons
بطيخ



mangoes
مانجو



koshari
كشري

Jack and the Beanstalk



beanstalk
ساق الفاصوليا



castle
قلعة



giant
عملاق



chop
يقطع

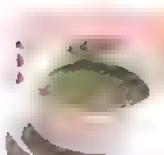


cage
قفص



grab
يمسك/ينتزع

Writing



molokhia
ملوخية



weigh out
يزن المقادير



mix
يخلط



boil
يغلي



pour
يصب/يسكب



bake
يخبز

ADJECTIVES



poor

فقير

rich

غني

special

خاص / مميز

angry

غاضب

golden

ذهبي

magic

سحر / سحري

terrible

فظيع

free

حر / طليق

kind

عطوف

easy

سهل





We plant our food

Conjugation of verbs

الافعال المنتظمة

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
unpack يفرغ	unpacked	have / has يملك	had
cry يصيح / يصرخ	cried	sell يبيع	sold
grab يمسك به / ينتزع	grabbed	buy يشتري	bought
chop يقطع	chopped	meet يقابل	met
turn on يشغل	turned on	throw يرمي	threw
weigh out يزن المقادير	weighed out	fall يسقط	fell
pour يصب / يسكب	poured	cut يقطع	cut
boil يغلي	boiled		

Language Functions

How about + V + ing.....?

- How about buying carrots?

Let's + inf.

- Let's buy a bottle of milk.

نستخدم
للإقتراح

Are there + اسم جمع....?

Is there + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد....?

- Are there any apples?

- Yes, there are. إجابة في الإثبات. - No, there aren't. إجابة في النفي.

- Is there any juice?

- Yes, there is. إجابة في الإثبات. - No, there isn't. إجابة في النفي.

2
للسؤال
بمعنى هل
يوجد...؟
نستخدم:

Drum

a / an

نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن وتعني واحدة من هذا الاسم.
- a mango ثمرة مانجو a carrot جزرة

نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك وتعني واحدة من هذا الاسم.
الحروف المتحركة:

a - e - i - o - u

- an onion

an apple

some / any

تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد some اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I would like some oranges, please.

وتستخدم any بمعنى (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال. ويأتي بعد any اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Is there any milk?

- We haven't got any nuts.





Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Exercise 1

Your favorite fruit

- 1 My favorite fruit is mango. It's healthy. We have a mango tree in our garden. My father waters the mango tree every day. When it grows, we eat some mangoes and sell some of them at the market. They are delicious fruit

Exercise 2

Healthy and unhealthy food

- 2 I like healthy food. I eat meat, fruit and vegetables. We eat healthy food to keep our bodies well. We don't like unhealthy food. Chocolate, pizza and cola are unhealthy food. I like chocolate, but I don't eat too much

Activity 1

My favorite food

- 3 My favorite food is fish. It is a delicious meal. My mother buys fish from the market. She cleans fish well and cooks it for lunch. I think it is healthy. I like it with rice, bread and salad. I eat it a lot.



Al-Azhar Text

اختبار خاص بالارهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ibrahim and his mom like going to the (park - market - shop)
2. Ibrahim and his mom buy (apples - sugar - vegetables)
3. In the morning, Ibrahim likes to drink (water - tea - milk)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

lots - any - like - carrots

- A : Hello, what would you ?
B : I would like some
A : Are there tomatoes?
B : Yes, there are of tomatoes.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Marwa is my sister. She is twenty years old. Yesterday, she went to the market with my mother to buy mangoes. They bought two kilos of mangoes to make mango juice. The mangoes were thirty pounds a kilo. Marwa made the juice. We drank it. It was delicious.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Marwa?
2. When did Marwa go to the market?

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Marwa bought some (apples - bananas - mangoes)
4. Marwa made delicious (molokhia - juice - soup)

5. Two kilos of mangoes were _____ pounds.

(30 - 60 - 20)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I would _____ an orange.

a like

b likes

c liked

2. Ahmed's favorite dessert is _____.

a milk

b water

c chocolate

3. _____ I have some lemons?

a Can

b Was

c Am

4. Is there _____ juice?

a an

b some

c any

5. _____ the syrup of basbousa for about ten minutes.

a Cut

b Boil

c Bake

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - for - What - the recipe?

2. tomatoes - Are - any - there?

3. love - baking - basbousa - I.

4. about - some - carrots - How - buying?

5. buy - juicy - Let's - pineapple - a nice





Activities on Unit 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع الجزء الثاني



- I like helping my mother to cook these
☐ a ingredients ☐ b meals ☐ c snacks ☐ d recipes
- We can make molokhia into
☐ a soup ☐ b yogurt ☐ c juice ☐ d honey
- We can put yogurt in the mixture of the
☐ a basbousa ☐ b molokhia ☐ c koshari ☐ d lentils
- All these meals make our bodies
☐ a free ☐ b healthy ☐ c unhealthy ☐ d terrible

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Nadia wants for dessert.
☐ a mahalabia ☐ b onions ☐ c koshari ☐ d lemons
- We want baking to make basbousa.
☐ a soup ☐ b powder ☐ c juice ☐ d honey
- We buy to make delicious juice.
☐ a beans ☐ b mangoes ☐ c eggs ☐ d nuts
- It's to eat a balanced diet. (2024)
☐ a healthy ☐ b unhealthy ☐ c bad ☐ d toxic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

vegetables - good - unhealthy - little - many

It's very important to eat healthy food. We should eat lots of fruit and ① every day. It's ② to eat chocolate or drink cola. Some people like chocolate very much, but they should eat a ③ It isn't ④ if you eat a lot.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Ahmed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his grandpa grows tomatoes, carrots and onions. There are lemons, lime

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



and mango trees as well. Ahmed's favorite healthy fruit is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. He also uses it to make fruit salad, cakes and mahalabia. Ahmed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK if he eats a little.

الذهبية - إدارة صحتك (2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed lives in a big
☐ a house ☐ b farm ☐ c garden ☐ d school
- There are lemons and trees in the garden
☐ a carrot ☐ b lime ☐ c chocolate ☐ d tomatoes

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does Ahmed's grandpa grow?
- What can Ahmed use mango for?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

- is - food - What - favorite - your?
- a mango - have - We - garden - tree - in the.

(2024)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I would like (any) carrots, please.
- There are some (tomato) in the market.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what would you like to eat, Sameh - - - - -

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- delicious meal
- fish with rice

My favorite food:

مجااب آخر الوحدة



I discover myself

I want to be healthy!

أريد أن اتمتع بصحة جيدة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about sports.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الرياضات.

2. Talk about sports I'm good or bad at.

- يتحدث الطالب عن الرياضات قائلا انا جيد هي أو انا سيئ هي.

3. Read and listen to a science fiction story.

- يقرأ ويستمع الطالب إلى قصة خيال علمي.

4. Learn how to say single-syllable words.

- يتعلم الطالب كيف ينطق كلمات ذات مقطع صوتي واحد.

5. Write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.

- يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.

6. Give a presentation about how to help my local environment.

- يقدم الطالب عرضاً تقديمياً عن مساعدة بيئته المحلية.

Lesson Part 1

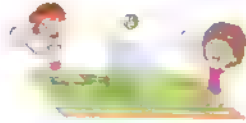
Sports

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



squash الاسكواش



tennis التنس



football كرة القدم



الكاراتيه



kung fu رياضة الكونج فو

Sports

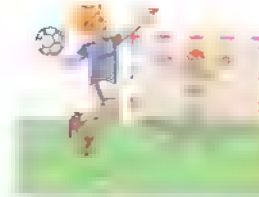
الألعاب
الرياضية



swimming السباحة



sailing الابداح



handball كرة اليد

club
look fun

نادي
يبدو ممتعاً

awesome
on TV

رائع / مذهل
في التلفزيون

ADJECTIVES

good at
bad at
better at

جيد في
سئ في
افضل في

worse at
great
favorite

اسوأ في
عظيم
مفضل

Help your child learn about sports.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم معارفات عن الرياضات.





I want to be healthy!

Other words

كلمات أخرى



Me too!	وأنا أيضاً	like	مثل
What about?	ماذا عن؟	game	مباراة / لعبة
What time ?	ما الوقت؟	later	فيما بعد / لاحقاً
sport	رياضة	match	مباراة
most popular	الأكثر شهرة		

Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
play يلعب	played	am / is / are يكون	was / were
try يجرب	tried	win يفوز	won
watch يشاهد	watched		

Language Functions

- Me too!

وأنا أيضاً

- So do I.

وأنا كذلك.

لموافقة
فيما قال
المتحدث:

Exercises

تمارين

● لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة:

good → better than → the best
جيد → أفضل من → الأفضل

- I'm better at tennis than I'm at football.

- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.

- I am the best at tennis.

bad → worse than → the worst
سئ → أسوأ من → الأسوأ

- I think kung fu is worse than karate.



Study the following

- 1 What are you watching? - ماذا تشاهد؟
- 2 I love squash! - أحب الإسكواش.
- 3 Who is winning? - من في طريقه للفوز؟
- 4 She is very good at playing squash - إنها جيدة جداً في لعبة الاسكواش.
- 5 What sport are you good at? - ما هي الرياضة التي تجيدها؟
- 6 I'm very good at playing tennis. - أنا جيد في لعب التنس.
- 7 I'm better at tennis than I am at football. - أنا أفضل في لعب التنس عن كرة القدم.
- 8 Let's go to the club later. - هيا نذهب الى النادي لاحقاً.
- 9 My favorites are swimming and sailing. - الرياضات المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار.
- 10 Sailing looks fun! - رياضة الإبحار تبدو ممتعة!
- 11 Great! So what time do you want to play football - عظيم! لذلك ما الوقت الذي تريده للعب كرة القدم؟
- 12 See you in the club later! - أراك لاحقاً في النادي.
- 13 What is the most popular sport in Egypt? - ما أكثر رياضة مشهورة في مصر؟

I want to be healthy!

Seleem and Wael talk about them:

استمع واقرا ورقم الرياضات في الصور طبقا لذكرها في النص.

Tapescript



استمع إلى النص



Seleem: What are you watching?

Wael : An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini – it's great. I love squash!

Seleem: Me too! Who's winning?

Wael : Raneem – she's very good at playing squash.

Seleem: I know. What sport are you good at?

Wael : I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?

Seleem: I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.

Wael : So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.

Seleem: Yes, let's go to the club later.

Wael : Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?

Seleem: I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?

Wael : My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!

Seleem: Great! So what time do you want to play football?

Wael : About five?

Seleem: Awesome – see you in the club later!



karate

☐

squash

☒

sailing

☐

kung fu

☐

هل تعلم؟

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هذه كرة قدم الفقاعات. يمكنك أن تجرب العديد من الرياضات القريبة. إنها ممتعة ويمكنها أن تحافظ على صحتك.



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

لخص الاستماع اختر الإجابة



1. My favorite sport is

☐ a tennis

☐ b squash

☐ c handball

☐ d football

2. I'm at football than swimming.

☐ a worse

☐ b better

☐ c greater

☐ d later

3. My is good at karate.

☐ a sister

☐ b friend

☐ c cousin

☐ d brother

4. We go together to the same

☐ a school

☐ b club

☐ c market

☐ d park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They are at tennis. They can't play it at all.

(2024)

☐ a good

☐ b bad

☐ c great

☐ d best

2. I play football with my friends at the

(2024)

☐ a hospital

☐ b bank

☐ c club

☐ d museum

3. Football is the most popular in Egypt.

☐ a color

☐ b sport

☐ c job

☐ d subject

4. What sport are you good ?

☐ a on

☐ b at

☐ c up

☐ d for

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

love - better - popular - won - good

Yesterday, I watched a match about squash in the club. My friends Hoda and Reham are ① at squash. Reham played well and ② the match. I ③ squash, but I'm ④ at tennis.





I want to be healthy!

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - at - She - bad - kung fu.

(2024)

2. watching - you - What - are?

3 go - to - club - to - later - the.

4. at - 1 am - football - playing - good.

(2024)

5. favorites - swimming - are - my - sailing - and

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. seleem and wael like sport.

2. What sports do we have in egypt

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقره إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

- 1- What's your favorite sport?
- 2- Where do you play it?



Lesson

Part 2

An Awful Nightmare!

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



air	الهواء	shade	ظل
emissions	انبعاثات	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
breathing	التنفس	nightmare	كابوس

ADJECTIVES

صفات

toxic	سام	awful	فظيع	asleep	نائم
dangerous	خطير	clean	نظيف	many	كثير (للعدد)
horrible	مفزع	dirty	قذر - متسخ	much	كثير (للكمية)

Other words

كلمات أخرى

smell better	له رائحة أفضل	problem	مشكلة
lungs	الرئتان	work hard	يعمل بجد
plastic	بلاستيك	get ready	يستعد
dream	حلم	planet	كوكب
in my heart	في قرارة نفسي		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

breathe	يتنفس	breathed	drive	يقود	drove
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed	cut down	يقطع	cut down
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	have to	يجب أن	had to
protect	يحمي	protected	fall	يسقط	fell
wait	ينتظر	waited	keep	يحافظ على	kept
call	ينادي / يتصل	called			





I want to be healthy!



- نستخدم الصفة **too** للتحدث عن شيء أو صفة زائدة عن الحد بحيث لا يمكن تحملها.
- There are **too** many emissions from cars.
- The tea is **too** hot, I can't drink it.

**too +
adj**

- نستخدم (اسم) **because of** وبعدها الاسم لبيان السبب.
- I didn't go to school **because of** the bad weather.

**2
because
of
بسبب**



toxic سام very bad to eat or breathe.

emissions انبعاثات gases from cars or factories.

shade ظل an area which the light of the sun can't reach.

nightmare كابوس a bad dream.

greenhouse صوبة زراعية a glass building used for growing plants.

breathe يتنفس to move air into and out of your lungs.



Study the following

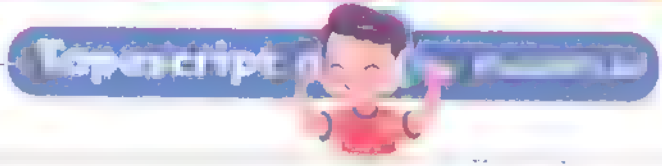
- 1 The air is black and toxic. - الهواء أسود وسام.
- 2 There are too many emissions from cars. - يوجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الخارجة من السيارات.
- 3 It's dangerous for children's lungs. - هذا خطير على رئتي الأطفال.
- 4 We only have fruit from greenhouses. - نحصل على الفاكهة فقط من الصوب الزراعية.
- 5 It was an awful nightmare. - كان كابوس فظيع.
- 6 We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more. - نستطيع استخدام سياراتنا أقل ونستخدم الدراجات أكثر.
- 7 We need to look after our planet. - نحتاج إلى الاعتناء بكوننا.





1 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



استمع إلى النص:



I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and **toxic**⁽¹⁾. There are too many **emissions**⁽²⁾ from cars. It's **dangerous**⁽³⁾ for children's lungs and we have to **stay at home**. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his **breathing**⁽⁴⁾.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- سام
- ٢- انبعاثات
- ٣- خطير
- ٤- التنفس
- ٥- بلاستيك
- ٦- ظل
- ٧- صوب راعيه
- ٨- يستعد
- ٩- كائوس فطيع
- ١٠- حلم

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much **plastic**⁽⁵⁾ in it and it is dirty. Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their **shade**⁽⁶⁾ on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from **greenhouses**⁽⁷⁾ and we can't sit outside any more.

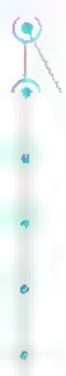
But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to **get ready**⁽⁸⁾ for school! It was all **an awful nightmare**⁽⁹⁾! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today But I remember my **dream**⁽¹⁰⁾ and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!

2 Match the words in the box with the definitions.

انظر إلى الكلمات بحيث سميك. صل الكلمة بمعناها:



- 1 toxic
- 2 emissions
- 3 shade
- 4 nightmare
- 5 greenhouse
- 6 breathe



- a. a bad dream
- b. to move air into and out of your lungs.
- c. gases from cars or factories
- d. out of the sun
- e. very bad to eat or breathe
- f. a glass building used for growing plants





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The air is black and (2024)
☐ a delicious ☐ b clear ☐ c beautiful ☐ d toxic
- A is a bad dream. (2026) *شيء سيئ أو مخيف يحلمه*
☐ a nightmare ☐ b shade ☐ c planet ☐ d greenhouse
- are gasses from cars or factories. (2024)
☐ a Fireworks ☐ b Ingredients ☐ c Emissions ☐ d Crops
- We sit under the of this tree and have lunch.
☐ a shade ☐ b share ☐ c shape ☐ d shore
- We can't go to school because the rain.
☐ a off ☐ b of ☐ c with ☐ d to
- The child is in bed and has a bad dream.
☐ a asleep ☐ b dangerous ☐ c bad ☐ d good

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

toxic - shade - emissions - house - breathing

Our city is polluted. There are too many ① from cars. The air is black and ② Children are ill because of problems with ③ We need to plant more trees. Trees help clean the air and we can sit in their ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

People in Cairo want to live in clean air and smell better. But the air is black and toxic. There's too much traffic. There are too many emissions from cars and factories. Children can't swim in the sea because of plastic. So we should solve the problem by using more bikes and planting more trees. We should keep our sea clean, too.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The air in Cairo is because of traffic.
☐ a white ☐ b toxic ☐ c fresh ☐ d clear

2. We should use more in Cairo.

a bikes

b emissions

c plastic

d pollution

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't children swim in the sea?

4. How should you keep the air clean?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. can't - **We** - go - outside.

2. and - is - **The** - black - toxic - air.

3. going - the - **We re** - to - today - park.

4. planet - **We** - need - look after - to - our.

5. emissions - are - **There** - too - many.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I can't go outside because (**off**) the rain.

2. There are (**two**) many emissions from cars.

3. It's time to (**getting**) ready for school.

4. We need to (**looked**) after our planet.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we can t sit outside any more.

2. what do you think of the story, Adel



Lesson 2

I'm good at ...

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار



jump
يقفز



do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة



walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء



cook
يطهو / يطبخ



draw
يرسم

Other words

أخرى

poem	قصيدة شعرية	do karate	يلعب الكاراتيه
French	اللغة الفرنسية	make dinner	يُعد طعام العشاء
Arabic	اللغة العربية	singing	الغناء
taekwondo	لعبة التايكوندو	team	فريق
chess	شطرنج	table tennis	تنس الطاولة
do math	يحل مسائل رياضيات		

Conjugation of verbs

أفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

climb	يتسلق
cook	يطهو
walk	يمشي
jump	يقفز
practice	يمارس
tidy	يرتب

climbed
cooked
walked
jumped
practiced
tidied

do	يفعل / يدرس / يحل
draw	يرسم
read	يقرأ
make	يُعد (طعام)
sing	يغني
write	يكتب
speak	يتحدث

did
drew
read
made
sang
wrote
spoke



Unit 2

• نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله:

good **at** جيد في
great **at** رائع في
bad **at** سيئ في

+

(V ing) (ing) فعل مضاف إليه

(n) اسم

1
good at /
great at
bad at

- I'm good **at** playing football. / I'm good **at** football.

⊙ يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is great **at** writing poems.

- They are bad **at** tennis.

عند إضافة (ing) لفعل منتهي بـ (e) غير منطوقة تحذف (e) ونضع (ing)

لاحظ

make → making

write → writing

see → seeing

لكن لاحظ: لم يحذف حرف (e) لأنه منطوق.

لاحظ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing).

sit → sitting

swim → swimming

⊙ نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- **Why** are you good at table tennis?

وللاجابة نستخدم:

because سبب → نتيجة

because

- I'm good at table tennis **because** I can move fast.

• نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة

أي أنها تضيف للمعنى:

but &
and

- I play tennis **and** basketball.

- I like fruit **and** vegetables.

• ونستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, **but** it is very hot.

- I don't eat candy, **but** I like fruit.





I want to be healthy!

1 Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل:

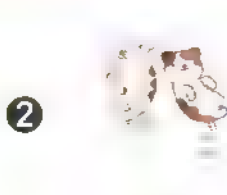
- ① I'm good at playing (play) football.
- ② My sister is very good at writing (write) poems.
- ③ Sami's bad at speaking (speak) French!
- ④ They're great at helping (help) their mom in the kitchen.



أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التالية:

انظر واكتب الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات التالية:

climb trees - cook - do jigsaws - draw - jump - walk across the desert



1. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

2. Cats are good at

3. Camels

4. Mazen

5. Reem

6. Dad



3 Listen and listen. Match the people (Dalia) things they are good or bad at. Write D (Dalia), A (Aser), or S (Salma)

اكتب D أو A أو S

Topascrip

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



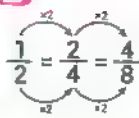
Dalia : Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he's bad at helping me in the kitchen! My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

a



D

b



c



d



e



f



g



4 Listen again, and complete the sentences:

استمع (للتصايق) مرة أخرى واكمل الجمل

1 Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.

2 Aser is my brother. He's at playing tennis, and he's bad at me in the kitchen!

3 My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's at tidying her room!



I want to be healthy!

CLIL: MATH

Adding and subtracting decimals

جمع وطرح الأعداد العشرية

- عند جمع أو طرح الأعداد العشرية تعامل مع الرقم مثل الأعداد الكاملة (بدون علامة عشرية) ولكن اجعل العلامة العشرية في الرقمين سواء كان جمع أو طرح تحت بعضهما تماماً كما في المثال:

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ + 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ - 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

- يجب أن يتوافق موضع العلامة العشرية في الرقم الجديد (الناتج) مع وضعه في الأرقام الأصلية كما في المثال:

$$\begin{array}{r} 7.2 \\ + 2.4 \\ \hline 9.6 \end{array}$$

أولاً الجمع:

- إذا كان ناتج جمع ما بعد العلامة العشرية في كلا الرقمين أكبر من الواحد فيضاف إلى الرقم الذي يسبق العلامة العشرية كالآتي:

1

$$\begin{array}{r} 7.1 \\ 6.4 \\ + 2.7 \\ \hline 9.1 \end{array}$$

2

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.10 \\ 7.983 \\ + 5.432 \\ \hline 13.415 \end{array}$$

- لاحظ أنه بشكل عام عند الجمع أو الطرح نبدأ بآخر رقم في العدد الأول مع آخر رقم في العدد الثاني.



ثانياً الطرح: ادرس الأمثلة التالية جيداً:

3

$$\begin{array}{r} 8.5 \\ - 3.2 \\ \hline 5.3 \end{array}$$

4

$$\begin{array}{r} ^4 ^{11} ^{13} \\ 15.23 \\ - 11.46 \\ \hline 3.77 \end{array}$$

5

$$\begin{array}{r} 60.678 \\ - 50.356 \\ \hline 10.322 \end{array}$$

1

Circle the correct answer.

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ① $7.983 + 5.432 = 13.415$ / 134.15
- ② $9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970$ / 17.970
- ③ $60.678 - 50.356 = 103.22$ / 10.322
- ④ $129.675 - 6.231 = 123.444$ / 12.3444

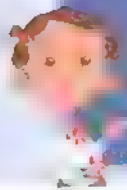
2

Solve the problems:

حل المسائل الآتية:

- ① If one tree is **3.459** meters tall and another tree is **2.753** meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?
 $3.459 - 2.753 = 0.706$
- ② Jihan ran **3.567** km on Sunday and **5.258** km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?
- ③ Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs **2.657** kg and the other weighs **3.205** kg. Find:
 - a the total weight of both watermelons.
 - b the weight difference between the two watermelons.





Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Soha is good at making

☐ a salad

☐ b cakes

☐ c pizza

☐ d rice

2. Soha can help her mum in the

☐ a bedroom

☐ b kitchen

☐ c living room

☐ d balcony

3. Soha is bad at washing

☐ a the dishes

☐ b the clothes

☐ c the windows

☐ d the car

4. Soha's great at shawerma.

☐ a eating

☐ b buying

☐ c making

☐ d giving

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mona is bad at doing

(2020)

☐ a book

☐ b pen

☐ c math

☐ d nice

2. are good at climbing trees.

(2024)

☐ a Cows

☐ b Elephants

☐ c Monkeys

☐ d Giraffes

3. They are great helping their mom.

☐ a at

☐ b of

☐ c on

☐ d for

4. Hisham is good at table tennis because he can fast.

☐ a draw

☐ b read

☐ c cook

☐ d move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

good - sleep - tidying - handball - doing

(2026)

I'm Mona. I'm good at playing ❶ I'm bad at playing basketball. Ahmed is my brother. He is ❷ at playing, tennis but he is bad at helping me in the kitchen. My sister's name is Dalia. She's good at ❸ math. She is bad at ❹ her room.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - bad - What - you - at?

2. is - He - good - football - at.

3. bad - making - He - is - dinner - at.

4. tiding - Hoda - her - good at - room - is.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He's good at (**does**) math.

2. Ali is good (**in**) Arabic.

بذارة بن محمد (2024)

3. I'm good at (**play**) football.

الحبيرة - بذارة الندرشيني (2024)

4. I like fruit (**because**) I don't like cola.

5. She is good at (**swim**) .

الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد (2024)

6. I'm good at swimming (**but**) sailing.

7. Monkeys are good at (**climb**) trees.

(2024)

8. We are bad (**of**) swimming.

9. Camels are great at (**walked**) across the desert.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

- helping mom
- drawing pictures



Lesson 3

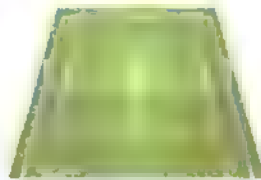
Sports places and equipment

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



ملعب كرة القدم



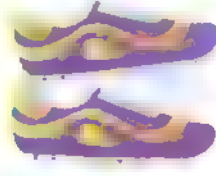
ملعب التنس



حمام السباحة



karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه



football boots
حذاء كرة القدم



kung fu
رياضة الكونج فو



tennis rackets
مضارب الاسكواش



نظارة السباحة



كرة التنس

Other words

fast

سريع

summer

الصيف

really

حقاً

different

مختلف

high kicks

ركلات عالية (ضربات بالرجل أعلى الجسم)

walls

حوائط / جدران

moves

حركات

go swimming

يذهب للسباحة

Conjugation of verbs

الصفات الشائعة

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

kick يركل

kicked

wear يرتدي

wore

practice يمارس

practiced

do يفعل

did

rhyme يقفي / يسجع

rhymed

go يذهب

went



Study the following

- 1 Kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing
- الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لي هو ركل الكرة داخل ملعب كرة القدم .
- 2 I like high kicks best.
- أفضل شيء أحبه هو الركلات العالية.
- 3 I love this sport because I'm very good at it
- أحب هذه الرياضة لأنني أجيدها .
- 4 I think it's an awesome sport.
- أعتقد انها رياضة رائعة.
- 5 I feel like a different person.
- أشعر انني شخص مختلف.

(1-8). Some speakers match more than one photo

استمع وصل المتحدثين بالصورة في تمرين رقم (١) بالكتاب المدرسي صفحة (٢٨).

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Narrator: A

Boy 1: I love my sport – kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

Narrator: B

Girl 1: Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

Narrator: C

Boy 2: I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

Narrator: D

Girl 2: I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

Narrator: E

Boy 3: I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

2 Listen again and complete the sentences:

استمع (لنص السابق) مرة أخرى واكمل الجمل:

1. I love my sport – kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.
2. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.
3. I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best.
4. You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket, and you move very fast.
5. I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.





I want to be healthy!

Pronunciation

Short a



man رجل



cat قطة



bat خفاش

Long a



pain ألم make يعمل

Short e



neck رقبة



pen قلم جاف



red لون احمر

Long e



tea شاي



feet أقدام

Short i



swim يعموم



fish سمكة



milk لبن

Long i



light ضوء



cry يبكي

Short o



sock جورب



doll عروسة لعبة

Long o



rose وردة

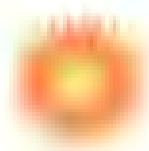


cone مخروط / قمع لذلك so

Short u



cup فنجان



sun الشمس



full ملي

Long u



cube مكعب

fuel وقود



Other words



teacher مدرسة



robot آلي



paper ورقة / ورق



spider عنكبوت

ندرس في هذا الدرس عدد الأصوات داخل الكلمات (لاحظ هناك فرق بين عدد الأصوات وعدد المقاطع الصوتية).

- تنقسم الأصوات في الكلمات على حسب الحروف المتحركة والساكنة داخل الكلمة مثل، **sock**
- تبدأ الكلمة بالصوت **S** ثم بعدها صوت حرف **O** المتحرك وحرفي **ck** معاً صوت واحد فتصبح الكلمة عبارة عن ثلاث أصوات.

كلمة **fish** → ثلاثة أصوات **f-i-sh**

- الحروف المجموعة مع بعضها وتعطي صوتاً واحداً،

sh ش → **fish**

th ذ/ث → **this / tooth**

ch تش → **chair**

igh long i → **light**

ck ك → **sock**

ph ف → **photo**

- أي حرفان مضاعفان لنفس الحرف ينطقا صوت واحد.

egg → **g** صوت واحد

glass → **s** صوت واحد

لاحظ!

كلمة **successful** هنا حرف **C** الأول ينطق مثل **k** لأنه جاء بعده حرف **E** والحرف **C** الثاني ينطق مثل حرف **S** لأن بعده حرف **e**.

نطق حرف **C** مثل حرف **S** إذا جاء بعده **e i y** وينطق **k** مع باقي الحروف.

إذا جاء حرف **e** في نهاية الكلمة وسبقه حرف ساكن لا ينطق مثل كلمة **cone**.

لا ينطق حرف **w** إذا جاء بعده حرف **r** مثل **write**.

لا ينطق حرف **k** إذا جاء بعده حرف **n** مثل **know**.

لا ينطق حرف **b** إذا جاء قبله حرف **m** مثل **lamb**.





I want to be healthy!

Syllables

المقاطع الصوتية

تتكون الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتي يحتوي على صوت متحرك كما يلي:

Count the syllables.



كلمة **chips** / تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد حيث بها صوت **short i**.

كلمة **chicken** / تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين.

لاحظ!

١ إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهي بذلك تعد مقطع صوتي واحد.

فمثلا كلمة **meat** بها حرفين متحركين (**a / e**) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.

٢ في كلمة **make** تنتهي الكلمة بحرف **e** لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.

٣ إذا جاءت (**e**) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (**L**) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتي كما في كلمة **apple**.

٤ لاحظ صوت حرف (**y**) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة **city** تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين

• لاحظ عدد الأصوات في كلمة **hat** ثلاثة لكن عدد المقاطع الصوتية واحد.



1 Circle the word with the same beginning sound.

ضع دائرة حول الثلاث اصوات في الكلمات الاتية. ثم اكتب الكلمات.

1



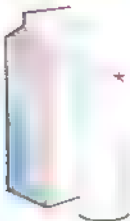
d i ll
t o f
cat

2



f u ll
t i sh

3



f u r
k o ll

4



n i ck
t e f

* الصورة رقم (٣) لا تعبر عن لبن، الصورة تعنى ملئ.

2 Listen and mark (✓) the words which have long vowels.

استمع وضع علامة (✓) على الكلمات التي بها اصوات متحركة ممتدة.

استمع إلى النص:



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 cry

☐

2 swim

☐

3 bat

☐

4 so

☐

5 fuel

☐

6 make

☐

7 cone

☐

8 cube

☐

9 feet

☐

3 Listen and say the words.

say the words

استمع واكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية بجوار الكلمة ثم قل الكلمة.

استمع إلى النص:



baby

delete

☐

robot

☐

window

☐

racket

☐

human

☐

spider

☐

tiger

☐

paper

☐

final

☐

hotel

☐

music

☐

Egypt

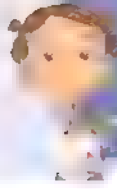
☐

pollute

☐

teacher

☐



Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- _____ is my favorite sport.
☐ a Football ☐ b Tennis ☐ c Squash ☐ d Handball
- I can play it on the _____.
☐ a court ☐ b pitch ☐ c racket ☐ d pool
- We kick the ball with our _____.
☐ a hands ☐ b feet ☐ c heads ☐ d arms
- We always _____ the match in my team.
☐ a win ☐ b lose ☐ c wear ☐ d keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- In "_____" we do high kicks.
☐ a tennis ☐ b football ☐ c kung fu ☐ d swimming
موسى مطروح - إدارة الحمام (2024)
- I use a _____ when I play squash.
☐ a pitches ☐ b goggles ☐ c boots ☐ d rackets
البحر الأحمر - إدارة سباق (2024)
- I wear my swimming _____ when I swim in the swimming pool. (2024)
☐ a goggles ☐ b rackets ☐ c boots ☐ d court
- I wear a _____ when I do karate.
☐ a boots ☐ b racket ☐ c suit ☐ d goggles
- When I play football, I wear football _____.
☐ a goggles ☐ b rackets ☐ c boots ☐ d hats
- A football _____ is the place where I play football.
☐ a shirt ☐ b house ☐ c pitch ☐ d pool

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

goggles - rackets - favorite - person - club

I love sport. My ❶ _____ sport is swimming. I go to the ❷ _____ every Sundays. I love swimming because I feel like a different ❸ _____. I wear my swimming suit and ❹ _____.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Ali, Aya and Marwa like sport. Ali likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. They play football on the pitch. His team always wins. Marwa likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. She wears goggles when she swims. Her friends like Marwa because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Aya is a good squash player. Her racket is red and white. They are good players. They advise all people to practice sports.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali and his friends play football on a
☐ a court ☐ b pool ☒ c pitch ☐ d street
2. Aya's racket is
☒ a red ☐ b white ☐ c red and black ☐ d red and white

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Which sport does Marwa like?
4. Why do Marwa's friends like her?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. best - kicks - like - I - high.
2. like - person - I - a different - feel.
3. pitch - We - on - play - football - the. (2024)
4. karate - for - My - white - suit - is.
5. is - an - awesome - This - sport.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's your favorite sport
2. i practice football on Friday

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

wear goggles - on the weekend

مجاوب آخر الوحدة



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



champion	بطل	competitor	منافس - خصم
athlete	لاعب رياضي	the future	المستقبل
medal	ميدالية	water bodies	المسطحات المائية
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)	pollution	تلوث

Other words

الكلمات الأخرى



Paralympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية (لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو
Olympic Games (Olympics)	الألعاب الأولمبية	at the age of....	في سن....
training	تدريب	practicing hard	يتدرب بجد
prize	جائزة	flag	علم
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	toilet	مرحاض (حمام)
special moment	لحظة خاصة	running water	المياه الجارية
sportsperson	شخص رياضي	organisms	الكائنات الحية
Moroccan	مغربي الجنسية	wastewater	مياه الصرف
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	wildlife	الحياة البرية
		garbage	قمامة

ADJECTIVES

صفات

amazing	منهل	kind	عطوف
important	هام / مهم	special	مميز / خاص
harmful	ضار	successful	ناجح
interesting	شيق		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
compete	يتنافس	competed	فاز	win	يفوز	won	فاز
carry	يحمل	carried	صار	become	يصبح	became	صار
kill	يقتل	killed	فقد	lose	يفقد	lost	فقد
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed	رمى	throw	يرمي	threw	رمى
cause	يسبب	caused					
avoid	يتجنب	avoided					

How to write a biography:

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية:

- لكتابة السيرة الذاتية عن شخص رياضي (مثلاً) نستخدم بعض المصطلحات والعبارات للتعريف بالشخص الرياضي:

1- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد.

2- He / She began بدأ.

3- He / She was the first كان أول شخص.

4- He / She is successful because يعتبر شخص ناجح لأنه.

5- He / She won فاز - فازت بـ.

6- He / She also / Moreover / as well as

هو بالإضافة إلى / علاوة على ذلك / بالإضافة إلى ذلك.....

- وفيما يلي نموذج لسيرة ذاتية (Biography) عن شخص رياضي (Mohamed Salah)

Mohamed Salah is a famous football player. He was born on June 15, 1992. He began playing football when he was young. He is a successful sportsperson because he trained a lot to win awards. He also helps poor people in his village.





I want to be healthy!

Study the following

1 Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player

- هداية ملاك هي لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.

2 She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag in the Olympic Games.

- هي واحدة من الاثنين اللذين حملتا علم مصر في الألعاب الأولمبية.

3 She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven.

- بدأت ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو وهي في السابعة من عمرها.

4 She won the bronze medal.

- حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية.

5 She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.

- ساعدت لاعبة مغربية من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة.

6 Water pollution can kill organisms

- يمكن لتلوث المياه أن يقتل الكائنات الحية.

7 Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

- يمكن أن تجعل المياه الملوثة الأطفال وكبار السن مرضى.

8 Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.

- المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.

9 Save as much water as possible.

- حافظ على أكبر قدر ممكن من المياه.

10 Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

- لا تُلقي القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.





Read and check:

اقرأ وتأكد من إجابتك.

استمع إلى النص:



1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian **taekwondo**⁽¹⁾ player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the **Tokyo Olympic Games**⁽²⁾ in 2021. This is **amazing**⁽³⁾.
2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the **bronze medal**⁽⁴⁾ at the **Rio Olympics**⁽⁵⁾ in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.
3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a **Moroccan athlete**⁽⁶⁾ with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to **compete**⁽⁷⁾ against, so Hedaya became her **competitor**⁽⁸⁾ and lost. Raja could **therefore**⁽⁹⁾ win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.
4. What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!



هدايا ملك

- ١- رياضة التايكوندو
- ٢- الألعاب الأولمبية
- ٣- مذهل
- ٤- ميدالية برونزية
- ٥- الألعاب الأولمبية
- ٦- رياضية مصرية
- ٧- منافس
- ٨- منافس
- ٩- بعد ذلك



Read again and answer the questions:

اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1. What is her sport? .
2. Why is she important?
3. Who did she help in 2016?
4. What does she want for the future?



Read again and choose the correct answer (a - d):

اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة أخرى ثم صل الفقرات من (١-٤) ب (a - d)

- a. What Hedaya will do next **4**
- b. Who the famous sportsperson is. ☐
- c. Something else she is famous for ☐
- d. Further information about her sport and her prizes ☐



Write a short paragraph about Hedaya Malak using the words:

Try to use the word

اكتب فقرة عن سيرة ذاتية لشخص رياضي.

athlete - compete - future - medals - sports - training

Mohamed Salah was born on June 15, 1992.





I want to be healthy!

5 Work in groups. Discuss and research

اعمل في مجموعات. ناقش وابحث:

How can we make our cities less polluted?

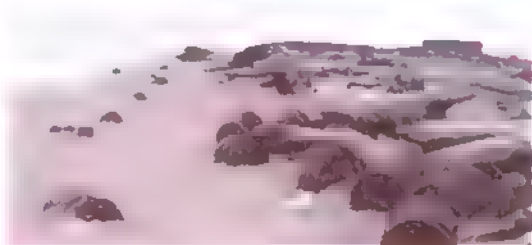
How can we make our air, water, and soil cleaner ?

استمع إلى النص:



Water pollution

When **harmful chemicals**⁽¹⁾ go into **water bodies**⁽²⁾ like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill **organisms**⁽³⁾ that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and **crabs**⁽⁴⁾. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can **cause**⁽⁵⁾ animals to lose their homes and change their **habitats**⁽⁶⁾.



Causes⁽⁷⁾

- Wastewater from **sinks**⁽¹⁰⁾, **toilets**⁽¹¹⁾, and showers
- Wastewater and chemicals from factories
- Wastewater from **agricultural land**⁽¹²⁾ and cities into rivers



Effects⁽⁸⁾

- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.



- Polluted water **destroys**⁽¹³⁾ **wildlife**⁽¹⁴⁾ in rivers.

Solutions⁽⁹⁾

- Save as much water as possible.
- Take shorter showers.
- **Avoid**⁽¹⁵⁾ **running water**⁽¹⁶⁾.
- Never throw garbage⁽¹⁷⁾ in or near a lake or beach.

Arabic meaning

- ١- مواد كيميائية ضارة
- ٢- مسطحات مائية
- ٣- كائنات حية
- ٤- كائنات
- ٥- يسبب
- ٦- بيئات
- ٧- الأسباب
- ٨- التأثيرات
- ٩- الحلول
- ١٠- أحواض
- ١١- مراحيض
- ١٢- أراض زراعية
- ١٣- يدمر
- ١٤- الحياة البرية
- ١٥- يتسبب
- ١٦- المياه الجارية
- ١٧- القمامة



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع إلى الكتاب



- Rania Elwani is a famous Egyptian
 - a taekwondo player
 - b tennis player
 - c swimmer
 - d handball player
- Rania Elwani was born on 14, 1977.
 - a March
 - b July
 - c October
 - d August
- She practiced swimming at the age of
 - a seven
 - b eight
 - c six
 - d nine
- She won many gold and medals.
 - a metal
 - b bronze
 - c silver
 - d special

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- She is good at sports. She's a famous (2024)
 - a athlete
 - b doctor
 - c teacher
 - d vet
- Water pollution is very (الصوتية - إدارة شمس الكوثر - 2024)
 - a useful
 - b good
 - c harmful
 - d helpful
- She won many prizes the age of 14.
 - a at
 - b on
 - c of
 - d in
- I didn't win the race, but I won the bronze
 - a metal
 - b medal
 - c racket
 - d ticket
- I play squash with Amr, Amr is my
 - a competitor
 - b training
 - c medal
 - d prize
- Hedaya Malak is a / an Egyptian taekwondo player.
 - a toxic
 - b famous
 - c angry
 - d unhealthy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

taekwondo - prizes - born - medal - won

Hedya Malak is a famous Egyptian athlete. She was ① on April 21, 1993. She started practicing ② at the age of seven. She won many ③ at the age of 14. She also won the bronze ④ in 2016.





I want to be healthy!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Water pollution is when harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. Water pollution can kill fish, birds and crabs that live in the water. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We can stop water pollutions. We can save as much water as possible, take shorter shower, avoid running water and never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Water pollution is

- ☐ a dangerous ☐ b beautiful ☐ c interesting ☐ d helpful

2. can make children and old people ill.

- ☐ a Salty ☐ b Fresh ☐ c Clean ☐ d Dirty

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is water pollution?

4. How can we stop water pollution?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. practicing - She - hard - is

2. is - kind - Hedaya - a very - person.

3. does - What - want - she - the future - for?

4. helped - a Moroccan - She - with - athlete - special needs.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hedaya malak is a famous player.

2. what does Hedaya do now ..

7 Write a biography of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب سيرة ذاتية من (٣٠) كلمة:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- What's her sport?

2- What does she want for the future?



Review



Sports



squash
الاسكواش



tennis
التنس



football
كرة القدم



karate
الكاراتيه



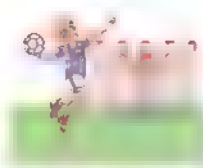
kung fu
الكونج فو



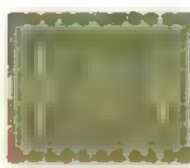
swimming
السباحة



sailing
الابحار



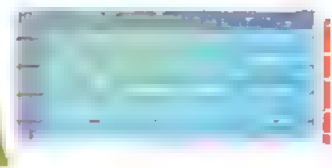
handball
كرة اليد



football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم



tennis court
ملعب التنس



swimming pool
حمام السباحة



karate suit
بدلة الكاراتيه



football boots
حذاء كرة القدم



squash rackets
مضارب الاسكواش



swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة



tennis ball
كرة التنس

Different activities



cook
يطهو / يطبخ



draw
يرسم



climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار



jump
يقفز



do jigsaws
يقوم بتركيب الصور المقطعة



walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء

Help your child revise Unit 2.

ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الثانية.



I want to be healthy!

Other words

كلمات أخرى



emissions	انبعاثات	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
champion	بطل	nightmare	كابوس
awesome	رائع / مذهل	competitor	منافس - خصم
biography	سيرة ذاتية (عن شخص)	athlete	لاعب رياضي
shade	ظل	pollution	التلوث

ADJECTIVES

صفات

worse at	أسوأ في	awful	فظيع
toxic	سام	clean	نظيف
dangerous	خطير	dirty	قذر - متسخ
horrible	مفزع	harmful	ضار
asleep	نائم	successful	ناجح
famous	مشهور	great	عظيم

Conjugation of verbs

التركيبات الفعلية

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
agree	يوافق	agreed		win	يفوز	won	
try	يجرب	tried		do	يفعل / يدرس / يحل	did	
compete	يتنافس	competed		draw	يرسم	drew	
kill	يقتل	killed		make	يُعد (طعام)	made	
destroy	يُدمر	destroyed		sing	يغني	sang	
cause	يسبب	caused		become	يصبح	became	
avoid	يتجنب	avoided		lose	يخسر	lost	
practice	يمارس	practiced		throw	يرمي	threw	
stay	يمكث - يبقى	stayed		speak	يتحدث	spoke	
protect	يحمي	protected		keep	يحافظ على	kept	



نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية في التحدث عن ما يجيد شخص ما فعله أو لا يجيد فعله :

good **at** جيد في
great **at** رائع في
bad **at** سيئ في

فعل مضاف إليه (ing) (V + ing)
اسم (n)

good at /
great at /
bad at

- I'm **good at** playing football. / I'm good **at** football.

يمكن استخدام أي من الصيغتين (v + ing) أو الاسم (n).

- My sister is **great at** writing poems.

- They are **bad at** tennis.

نستخدم (Why) للسؤال عن السبب.

- **Why** are you good at table tennis?

ولاجابة نستخدم، سبب **because** نتيجة

because

- I'm good at table tennis **because** I can move fast.

نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي أنها تضيف للمعنى :

- I play tennis **and** basketball.

- I like fruit **and** vegetables.

**but &
and**

ونستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- The desert is very interesting, **but** it is very hot.

- I don't eat candy, **but** I like fruit.

لاحظ التالي عند المقارنة :

good **better than** **the best**
جيد أفضل من الأفضل

- I'm better at tennis than I'm at football.

- I'm good at football but I'm better at squash.

bad **worse than** **the worst**
سيئ أسوأ من الأسوأ

- I think kung fu is worse than karate.





Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

Your favorite sport

- 1 I like sports. My favorite sport is karate. I do karate in the club. I wear a karate suit. I practice it with my friends. I go to the club with my father on Friday. I'm great at doing karate.

Lesson 2

The things you are good or bad at

- 2 I'm good at helping my mom in the kitchen. I'm good at cooking. I cook delicious meals. But I'm bad at cleaning the house or drawing pictures.

Lesson 3

The swimming pool

- 3 I like swimming. I swim in the swimming pool. I wear goggles to protect my eyes. I like sports. I swim on the weekend. I want to be a good swimmer in the future. My friends like swimming, too.

Lessons 4&5

My favorite player Hedaya Malak

- 4 My favorite Egyptian taekwondo player is Hedaya Malak. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She won many important prizes.

Activity - Unit 2

A sportsperson

- 5 My friend is a sportsperson. He loves sports very much. He practices sports in the club. He won many prizes. He won the bronze and gold medals. He trains hard to win a lot of prizes in the future.



Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأحضر الإجابة الصحيحة:

اطن الاستماع الخط الكتاب



1. I go to the tennis court in the (park - club - school)
2. The club is my house. (near - next - behind)
3. I take a to play tennis. (suit - racket - bike)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

squash - match - watching - sport

- A : What are you ?
B : An old
A : What are you good at?
B : I'm good at playing

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أفردا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Osama. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I play football with my friends at the club. I go to the club every morning. I'm bad at playing handball.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What is Osama good at?
2. When does Osama go to the club?

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Osama likes making (cakes - salad - cheese)
4. Osama is bad at playing (football - handball - tennis)



I want to be healthy!

5. Osama plays football with his (brothers - cousins - friends)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good playing football.

a at

b for

c in

2. Hedaya Malak born on April 21, 1993.

a was

b is

c were

3. I'm good at handball, I am bad at tennis.

a and

b but

c because

4. I like sitting in the of trees on hot days.

a chair

b shade

c ship

5. Soha is bad at kung fu.

a play

b playing

c plays

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. play - Where - tennis - you - do?

2. you - later - the club - See - in.

3. are - jumping - C - at - good.

4. she - is - is - important?

5. water - make - ill - Dirty - children - can.



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اختر الإجابة



- Pollution is a dangerous problem in our
☐ a city ☐ b world ☐ c village ☐ d country
- People garbage in lakes, rivers and seas.
☐ a buy ☐ b kill ☐ c throw ☐ d get
- The water kills organisms that live in water.
☐ a fresh ☐ b polluted ☐ c cold ☐ d hot
- We should find solutions to the problem and water.
☐ a save ☐ b destroy ☐ c lose ☐ d carry

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Football is my favorite
☐ a color ☐ b time ☐ c sport ☐ d food
- I can do high kicks in
☐ a handball ☐ b kung fu ☐ c tennis ☐ d sailing
- We should clean air.
☐ a pollute ☐ b breathe ☐ c stop ☐ d lose
- I play tennis with balls and tennis
☐ a goggles ☐ b rackets ☐ c pitches ☐ d boots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

practicing - born - athlete - bronze - won

Hedaya Malak is my favorite player. She's a famous Egyptian ❶. She started ❷ taekwondo at the age of seven. She ❸ prizes at the age of 14. She also won the ❹ medal in 2016.





I want to be healthy!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active. All the teachers like her and she won many prizes in the school team.

A- Choose the correct answer:

- Sara plays squash at the
☐ a park ☐ b club ☐ c zoo ☐ d garden
- She wants to be a famous
☐ a doctor ☐ b teacher ☐ c engineer ☐ d player

B- Answer the following questions:

- How old is Sara?
- What is Sara's favorite sport?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- great - Mazin - is - doing - at - jigsaws.
- won - important - Hedaya - medals - many.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

أقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She's good at (swim).
- I go to the club to (playing) tennis.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he is a famous egyptian player

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

A sportsperson

practice sports - won many prizes



I discover myself

How do I look?

كيف يبدو مظهري؟



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

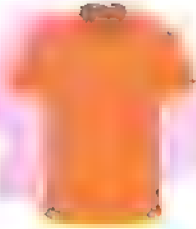
1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الملابس المختلفة.
2. Listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن الأمتعة المستخدمة للسفر في إجازة.
3. Practice using the infinitive of purpose.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء.
4. Read a traditional folktale.
- يقرأ الطالب حكاية شعبية قديمة.
5. Learn how to say past simple endings /d/ , /t/ and /ed/ .
- يتعلم الطالب نطق الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ed) في الماضي البسيط.
6. Multiply multi-digit numbers.
- يقوم الطالب بعملية ضرب للأرقام الكبيرة.
7. Write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
- يكتب الطالب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة باستخدام الصفات.
8. Research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل منشور عن الملابس التقليدية حول العالم.

Lesson 1

Our trip to Al Fayoum

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



T-shirt
تي شيرت



sunglasses
نظارة شمس



swimsuit
شورت سباحة (مايوه)



headscarf
كوفية (شال)



sweater بلوفر

Clothes

ملابس



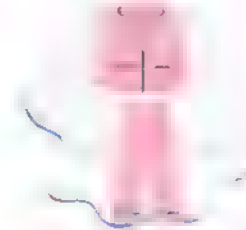
sneakers حذاء رياضي



jacket جلابية



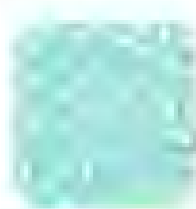
dress عُقد



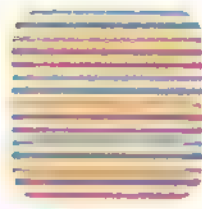
jumpsuit بيجامة



coat بالطو



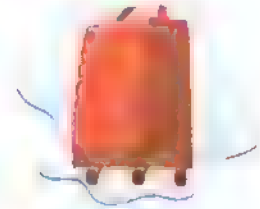
spotted
منقط



striped مخطط (مقلم)
خطوط (تقليم)



car يعبئ (حقيرة السفر)



suitcase
شنطة سفر





ADJECTIVES

صفات

exciting

شيق | مثير

excited

متشوق | متحمس

lovely

محبوب

cool

رائع بارد

comfortable

مريح

natural

طبيعي

man-made

من صنع الانسان

Other words

كلمات أخرى



trip

رحلة قصيرة

come on

هيا

ages

فترة طويلة

shopping mall

مركز تسوق (مول)

pool

حمام سباحة

walk around

يتجول

gold

ذهب ذهبي

Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

remember يتذكر

remembered

take يأخذ

took

pack يُعبئ (شنط سفر)

packed

see يرى

saw

visit يزور

visited

wear يرتدي

wore

give يعطي

gave

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

1 للتعبير عن الاقتراح نستخدم:

What about + noun ماذا عن / ما رأيك في ؟ اسم

Suggestion
الإقتراح

-What about my best galabeya?

مصدر الفعل + should ينبغي أن + فاعل

Giving advice
التعبير عن
النصيحة

-You should pack a sweater.



How do I look?



Future simple tense

1

Future simple tense

المستقبل البسيط

مصدر الفعل + will ('ll) + inf. (كل الضمائر)

يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- I **will** wear my gold necklace.
- She'll **pack** her suitcases tomorrow.

وهي النفي نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + will not (= won't) + inf.

- You **won't** need your coat.

وهي السؤال بـ (هل.....؟) نستخدم:

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- **Will I** need my scarf?

- Yes, you **will**. إجابة مختصرة مثبتة.

- No, you **won't**. إجابة مختصرة منفية.

الكلمات الدالة:

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

tomorrow غدا - next القادم (week - year - month) - in the future في المستقبل

نستخدم the one لعدم تكرار الاسم المفرد:

- I'll need my **scarf**. I'll take **the one** that my grandma gave me.

ونستخدم the ones لعدم تكرار الاسم الجمع:

- He'll need these **socks**. He'll buy **the ones** with the stripes.

the one /
the ones

Study the following

- 1 We need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow

- نحتاج أن نعبئ شنط السفر للإجازة غداً.

- 2 We haven't seen them for ages.

- لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة.

- 3 You need to wear something comfortable on your feet

- تحتاج أن ترتدي شيء مريح في قدميك.

- 4 What else do I need?

- ماذا أحتاج أيضاً؟

- 5 It will be very sunny.

- سيكون الطقس مشمس جداً.

- 6 It can be cool in the evenings.

- يمكن أن يكون الطقس بارد في الأمسيات.

- 7 I'll take the ones with the stripes.

- سوف آخذ البيجامة التي بها خطوط (مقلمة).

- 8 They're really cool!

- إنها رائعة حقاً.

- 9 Cotton grows in the Nile Delta

- ينمو القطن في دلتا النيل.



1 Listen and read. What are Mom and Aser doing?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تفعل الأم وأسر؟



الاستماع إلى النص:

Mom: Aser, we need to **pack** our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

Aser: It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

Mom: I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

Aser: OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

Mom: Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

Aser: Will I need a coat and a scarf?

Mom: No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

Aser: OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

Mom: You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

Aser: What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

Mom: No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

Aser: Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the **stripes**. They're really cool!

2 Listen and number:

استمع ورقم كما بالنماذج

spotted

منقط

striped

مخطط (مقلم)

Tape script



استمع إلى النص



- 1- Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought striped pajamas.
- 2- Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.
- 3- Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.
- 4- Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

a



b



c



d



1

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

- Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.

- ينمو القطن في دلتا النيل. يعتقد كثير من الناس أن القطن المصري هو أفضل قطن في العالم.

Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



- I went to Alexandria last
☐ a winter ☐ b summer ☐ c spring ☐ d fall
- I went to Alexandria with my
☐ a friends ☐ b family ☐ c brothers ☐ d cousins
- I took my sunglasses because it's
☐ a windy ☐ b raining ☐ c sunny ☐ d cloudy
- I took my three blue
☐ a T-shirts ☐ b shorts ☐ c dresses ☐ d sweaters

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

back - pack - excited - shorts - sunglasses

I am Sarah. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family tomorrow. We are very **1** We need to **2** our suitcase. My brother Hema needs to pack his swimming **3** to swim in the sea. I will take my **4** because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I wear my to protect my eyes from the sun. (2024)
☐ a scarf ☐ b galabeya ☐ c sunglasses ☐ d shorts
- Mona is in her She is going to sleep. (2024)
☐ a sneakers ☐ b sunglasses ☐ c scarf ☐ d pajamas
- I wear my when I go swimming. (2024)
☐ a galabeya ☐ b sweater ☐ c swimming shorts ☐ d sneakers
- A has long white sleeves. (2024) الإسكندرية إدارة غرب
☐ a T-shirt ☐ b skirt ☐ c galabeya ☐ d hat



How do I look?

5. I need to pack my clothes in the _____ to travel.

سأرتاح في (2024)

☐ glasses

☐ sneakers

☐ pocket

☐ suitcase

6. I'll take my _____, we'll be walking around a lot on our feet.

☐ sneakers

☐ sunglasses

☐ pajamas

☐ necklace

7. Women wear _____ around their necks.

☐ coats

☐ sweaters

☐ necklaces

☐ sunglasses

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. made - My shirt - of - is - cotton.

(2024)

2. pack - my - _____ - T-shirt - favorite.

3. a - took - Sun - umbrella - spotted.

4. grows - Delta - _____ - Nile - in the.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She _____ (**is**) pack her scarf tomorrow.

(2024)

2. We won't _____ (**needed**) our coats.

3. She'll _____ (**packing**) her suitcase.

4. You should _____ (**took**) your sweater.

5. It will _____ (**being**) sunny tomorrow.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why do you need your necklace

2. hoda went to the shopping mall yesterday

Lesson Part 1

My favorite clothes

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

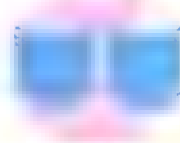


galabeya

جلابية



أكمام



جيوب



بدلة



a striped dress

فستان مخطط (مقلم)



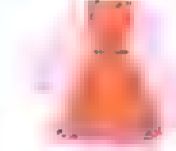
فستان منقط



بلوفر



حزام



costume

زي خاص



crown

تاج



gloves

قفازات (جواني)



robe

رداء / ثوب (روب)

ADJECTIVES



traditional

تقليدي / قديم

hidden

خفي / غير ظاهر

colorful

كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان

useful

مفيد

popular

شعبى شائع محبوب

sunburned

مصاب بحروق الشمس

special

مميز / خاص

Other words



social media

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

information

معلومات

for example

على سبيل المثال / مثلاً

princess

أميرة

study hard

يذاكر بجد

Egyptian clothing

ملابس مصرية

festival

مهرجان / احتفال

pattern

شكل / نمط

cardboard paper

ورق مقوى

cotton

قطن

wedding

زفاف

essay

مقال

grades

درجات في الامتحان

library

مكتبة لقراءة واستعارة الكتب



How do I look?

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	tell يخبر	told
borrow يستعير / يستلف	borrowed	get يحصل علي / يصاب بـ	got
protect يحمي	protected	leave يغادر / يترك	left
travel يسافر	traveled	buy يشتري	bought
call يتصل / ينادي	called	sleep ينام	slept
study يذاكر / يدرس	studied		



Study the following

- I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing.
- أعمل مشروع مدرسي عن الملابس المصري.
- What do you want to know?
- ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟
- Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?
- هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟
- This is the long robe that is very popular.
- هذا الرداء الطويل شائع جدًا.
- The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned.
- الأكمام طويلة ولذلك لن نصاب بحروق شمس.
- But they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside.
- لكنهم غير ظاهرين، لا تستطيع أن تراهم من الخارج.

1

What does Tomas want to know about?

استمع واقرأ. فارس يتكلم مع صديقه توماس عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. ماذا يريد توماس أن يعرف؟

Tomas : Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project⁽¹⁾ about Egyptian clothing⁽²⁾. Can you give me some information?

Fares : Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

Tomas : Well, what do you usually⁽³⁾ wear?

Fares : I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

Tomas : Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional⁽⁴⁾ Egyptian clothes?

Fares : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe⁽⁵⁾ that is very popular⁽⁶⁾.



- 1- مشروع
- 2- ملابس مصرية
- 3- عادة
- 4- تقليدي
- 5- رداء
- 6- شائع / محبوب



Tomas : Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

Fares : Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The **sleeves**⁽⁷⁾ are long so we don't get sunburned!

Tomas : Are there **pockets**⁽⁸⁾?

Fares : Yes! But they're **hidden**⁽⁹⁾ – you can't see them from the **outside**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Tomas : Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special **festival**⁽¹¹⁾?

Fares : We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful **patterns**⁽¹²⁾ on them.

Tomas : Thanks, Fares. That's really **useful**⁽¹³⁾!

Arabic Meaning

- ٧ - الأكمام
- ٨ - جيوب
- ٩ - خفي
- ١٠ - الخارج
- ١١ - إحتفال
- ١٢ - أشكال
- ١٣ - مفيد

2 Look and complete:

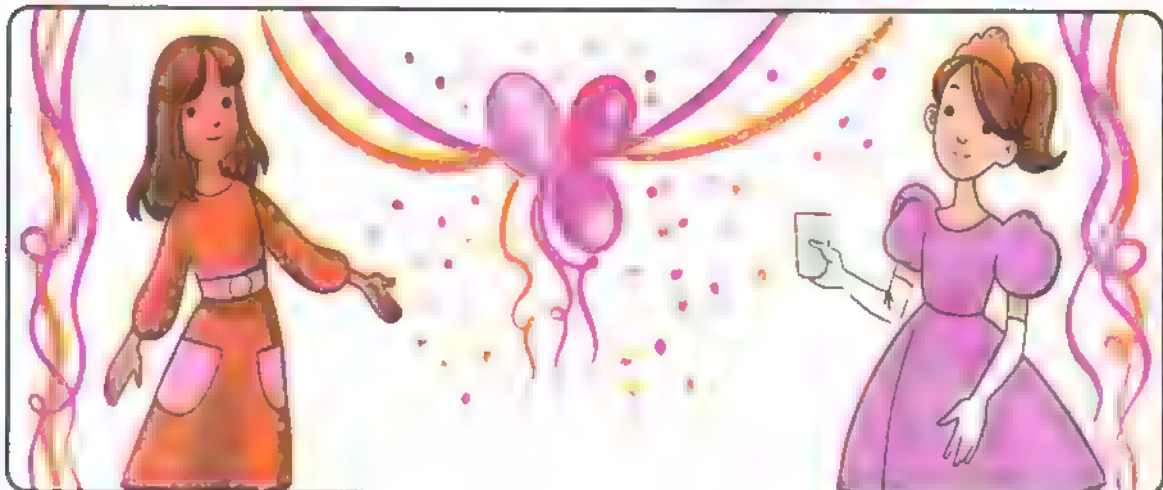
انظر وأكمل،

انظر إلى الصورة وأكمل بالكلمات في القائمة :

belt - costume - crown - gloves - pockets - spotted

1. Marwa is wearing a **spotted** dress with a **belt**. There are two

2. Reem is wearing a She looks like a princess! She has a on her head. She has white on her hands.



Lesson 2

Part 2

My favorite clothes

نستخدم (to + inf.) للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء ما.

- I need a pen **to write** my homework.

وفي حالة السؤال عن الغرض نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (لماذا...؟ Why...?)

- Why did Samy go to town?

Samy went to town **to buy** new sneakers.

- Why did Tarek make a suit?

Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

⦿ لاحظ للاجابة عن السؤال بـ (Why...?) نستخدم (because or to)، لكن يأتي بعد (because)

جملة:

- He went to town because he wanted to buy a T-shirt.

To + inf.
(مصدر الفعل)
للتعبير عن
الغرض

1 Regular verbs

١- يعبر عن شيء حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

٢- يتكون من: أفعال منتظمة.

⦿ يضاف للفعل (d) أو (ed) أو (ied).

⦿ يضاف للفعل (d) إذا انتهى بحرف (e).

move → moved celebrate → celebrated

⦿ يضاف للفعل (ed) إذا لم ينتهي بحرف (e).

borrow → borrowed travel → traveled

⦿ يضاف للفعل (ied) إذا كان آخره حرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن.

study → studied cry → cried

2 Irregular verbs

٣- وهناك أفعال شاذة تحفظ تصريفاتها:

leave → left buy → bought

- I bought some glasses yesterday.

- My teacher used a red pen.

2
Past
simple tense
زمن الماضي
البسيط

مراجعة

(مصدر الفعل) + didn't + inf. + فاعل

-I didn't buy glasses yesterday.

Question في السؤال

inf. + فاعل + (Did) + كلمة استفهام

-What did the teacher use?

He used a pen.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- yesterday بالأمس - last الماضي (week - month - year) / in + عام ماضٍ

Work with a partner. Read and answer.

اشترك مع زميلك واقرأ وأجب:

● اقرأ الإجابات والاسئلة الآتية حول استخدام to + inf. للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء.

1. Why did Sameh go to town?

• Sameh went to town to buy new sneakers.

2. Why did Nessma go to the kitchen?

• Nessma went to the kitchen to make a cake.

3. Why did Tarek make a suit?

• Tarek made a suit to wear to a wedding.

2 Circle the correct words.

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة.

1. I went to the library borrow / to borrow a book.

2. Injy used a pen to write / write her essay.

3. Sherif bought a new suitcase take / to take on holiday.

4. Malak wears her sunglasses to protect / protent her eyes.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1 I bought some sunglasses

2 We went to the park

3 Hazem studied hard

4 Basma went to the shop

5 They went to the library

• to play with our friends.

• to buy some bread.

• to finish their homework.

• to wear on holiday.

• to get good grades.



How do I look?

4 Listen and numb

استمع ورقم

Tapscript



استمع إلى النص



- Girl 1 I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.
- Boy 1 I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.
- Boy 2 : I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework.
- Girl 2 : I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

a

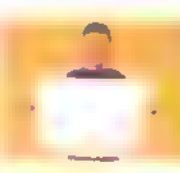

☐

b

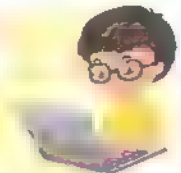


1

c


☐

d


☐

5

انظر واكتب جمل في زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الفرض

1. I / go / to my bedroom / sleep

I went to my bedroom to sleep.

2. Nayera / leave / the party / catch her train

3. Adam / call / Younis / ask for help with his project

4. Tarek / buy / a racket / play tennis

5. My teacher / use / a red pen / correct homework

Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Many people wear Egyptian clothes.
☐ a traditional ☐ b old ☐ c new ☐ d long
- People wear when they're celebrating special festivals.
☐ a shorts ☐ b galabeyas ☐ c sweaters ☐ d sneakers
- The galabeyas have long
☐ a necklaces ☐ b belts ☐ c gloves ☐ d sleeves
- Some people wear galabeyas with colors.
☐ a easy ☐ b different ☐ c some ☐ d big

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Nour is wearing on her hands. (2024)
☐ a glasses ☐ b belts ☐ c gloves ☐ d shorts
- Marwa went to the to borrow books. (2024)
☐ a wedding ☐ b market ☐ c shop ☐ d library
- Hala went to the kitchen to a cake. (2024)
☐ a buy ☐ b make ☐ c do ☐ d write
- The is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.
☐ a pocket ☐ b crown ☐ c galabeya ☐ d belt
- I wore to keep me warm in winter.
☐ a shorts ☐ b gloves ☐ c T-shirts ☐ d belts
- Nabil has a small, so he can't put his money in it.
☐ a pocket ☐ b belt ☐ c crown ☐ d scarf
- The galabeya is a long white
☐ a robe ☐ b belt ☐ c skirt ☐ d scarf

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pen - crown - gloves - spotted - princess

Samar and Aya are in a party. Samar is wearing a ❶ dress with two pockets.
 Aya is wearing a costume. She is wearing a ❷ on her head. She looks like
 a ❸ ! She is wearing white ❹ on her hands. (2024)





How do I look?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Omar. I live in Aswan, Egypt. It's usually very hot here. I wear T-shirts and shorts. My favorite thing to wear is the galabeya. Galabeyas are traditional Egyptian clothes. They are very popular. They are long, white robes. They are made from cotton. The sleeves of the galabeyas are usually long, so people don't get sunburned. They have pockets, too. You can't see them from the outside because they are hidden. I like to wear the galabeya for Eid.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. Aswan is usually very

☐ a cold

☐ b snowy

☐ c hot

☐ d rainy

2. Omar's favorite thing to wear is the

☐ a galabeya

☐ b shirt

☐ c jacket

☐ d sweater

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What are the galabeyas made from?

4. Do galabeyas have pockets?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. like - Reem - princess - looks - a.

2. my - My - thing - sweater - favorite - is.

3. pockets - in - Are - your - there - dress?

4. galabeyas - wear - People - special - in - festivals.

(2024)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They (clean) the room yesterday.

(2024)

2. Mom (cook) molokhia last Friday.

(2024)

3. We didn't (watched) the match yesterday.

(2024)

4. I (visit) my grandfather yesterday.

(2024)

5. Nabil went to his bedroom to (slept).

(2024)

6. I (don't) see my friend yesterday.

(2024)

7. My brother bought a suit to (wore) in the party.

8. Hoda went to the market (for) buy food.

9. A: (How) did Omar go to the library? B: To read books.

Lesson

The Elves and the Shoemaker



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



shoemaker
elf (elves)

صانع أحذية
جنى صغير (جن)

enough

كافى

ADJECTIVES

kind

طيب

honest

أمين

poor

فقير

tired

متعب

perfect

رائع

amazing

مدهش رائع

amazed

مدهش

beautiful

جميل

delicious

لذيذ

surprised

مدهش

new

جديد

interesting

شيق

happy

سعيد

little

قليل صغير

Other words

money

نقود

tonight

هذا المساء (الليلة)

sports day

يوم رياضى

Oh dear.

وا أسفاه.

wife

زوجة

workshop

ورشة

leather

جلد مذبوغ

quickly

بسرعة

happily

بسعادة

meal

وجبة

details

تفاصيل

kindness

عطف

pair

زوج من (أحذية مثلا)

once upon a time

يحكى أن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

believe يؤمن / يعتقد

dance يرقص

thank يشكر

describe يصف

try يجرب / يقيس

Past ماضى

believed

danced

thanked

described

tried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

cut out يقص

pay يدفع (مالا)

say يقول

find out يكتشف

leave يترك / يغادر

hide يختبئ

Past ماضى

cut out

paid

said

found out

left

hid



Study the following

- 1 The shoemaker worked hard but he had no money. - عمل صانع الأحذية بجد ولكن لم يكن معه نقود.
- 2 The shoemaker was kind and honest. - كان بائع الأحذية طيب وأمين.
- 3 The shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. - لم يصدق صانع الأحذية عينيه.
- 4 The shoemaker's wife made him a delicious meal. - أعدت زوجة صانع الأحذية له وجبة لذيذة.
- 5 The shoemaker and his wife were amazed. - صانع الأحذية وزوجته كانوا مندهشين.
- 6 They were surprised to see two little elves. - كانوا مندهشين لرؤية اثنان من الجن الصغير.
- 7 She walked in the park yesterday. - قامت بالتمشية في الحديقة أمس.
- 8 They're perfect. - إنهم رائعين.
- 9 The wife looked surprised. - بدت الدهشة على الزوجة.
- 10 I have never seen such amazing shoes. - لم أرى أبداً مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش.
- 11 Can I try them? - هل يمكن أن أقيسهم؟
- 12 The shoemaker and his wife lived happily. - عاش صانع الأحذية وزوجته بسعادة.
- 13 Who made the shoes every night? - من صنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

1 Listen and match the words with the pictures.

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة في النص. مانع هذه الكلمات؟

2 Listen and match the words with the pictures.

استمع واقرأ. من كان يصنع الأحذية كل ليلة؟

Tapescript

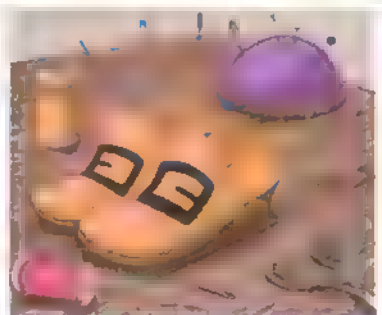


استمع إلى النص.



Once upon a time, a **kind** and **honest** shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very **poor**, but they were **happy**. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too **tired** to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.





The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are **beautiful**. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said. Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such **amazing** shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a **delicious** meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us." That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their **new** clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

3

Read again! اقرأ مرة أخرى! انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة في النص واوجد:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة في النص واوجد:

1. a word that describes the shoemaker: **honest** كلمة تصف صانع الأحذية.
2. a word that describes the shoes: _____
3. a word that describes the shoemaker's meal: _____



Pronunciation

How to pronounce final /ed/ sounds in verbs

كيفية نطق /ed/ في نهاية الأفعال المنتظمة

• نطق /ed/ آخر الأفعال المنتظمة له ثلاث طرق كما يلي:

١- تنطق /ed/ في نهاية الفعل الماضي /Id/ للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات /d/ , /t/

want	→	wanted	/Id/	need	→	needed	/Id/
visit	→	visited	/Id/	add	→	added	/Id/

٢- تنطق /ed/ في نهاية الفعل الماضي /d/ للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات التي تهتز بها الأحبال الصوتية وهي: (z - g - j - v - y - w) (ذ) (n - m - b - l - r - th)

play	→	played	/d/	clean	→	cleaned	/d/
slow	→	slowed	/d/	grab	→	grabbed	/d/
breathe	→	breathed	/d/				

٣- تنطق /ed/ في نهاية الفعل الماضي /t/ للأفعال التي تنتهي بالأصوات التي لا تهتز بها الأحبال الصوتية وهي: (p - gh - t) (ث) (ch - s - x - sh - f - k - j - v - y - w)

wash	→	washed	/t/	ask	→	asked	/t/
fix	→	fixed	/t/	dress	→	dressed	/t/
laugh	→	laughed	/t/	watch	→	watched	/t/
type	→	typed	/t/				

Look, say and write!

انظر وقل وصل!

a



b



c



1

1. Yesterday, I played football.
2. Yesterday, I walked in the park.
3. Yesterday, I tidied my room.

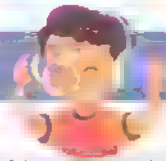


2

Listen and write

استمع

Tapescript



استمع إلى النص



1. Played. Played. I played football.
2. Walked. Walked. I walked in the park.
3. Tidied. Tidied. I tidied my room.

1- /d/ played

2- /t/ walked

3- /Id/ tidied

3

Listen and write the verbs in the past tense

استمع واكتب الأفعال في المجموعة الصحيحة

Tapescript



استمع إلى النص



1. Ramy **cleaned** the windows. /d/
2. I **lived** in Cairo. /d/
3. We **needed** to leave. /Id/
4. I **studied** English. /Id/
5. I **washed** the car. /t/
6. I **worked** in Alexandria. /t/

cleaned - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/

played

cleaned

/t/

walked

/Id/

tidied

4

Copy, Translate and Check

قل. ثم استمع وتأكد

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1- asked /t/ | 2- counted /Id/ | 3- delivered /d/ |
| 4- dressed | 5- enjoyed | 6- fixed |
| 7- promised | 8- slowed | 9- tasted |
| 10- waited | 11- carried | 12- wanted |





How do I look?

CLIL: MATH

Multiply multi-digit numbers

ضرب الأعداد الكبيرة

1 Think and write the numbers. Listen and check:

فكر واكتب الأرقام. استمع وناكد.

Tapescript

نص الاستماع



1. Ten times ten equals a hundred.
2. Thirty times twenty equals six hundred.
3. Fifty times fifty equals two thousand, five hundred.
4. Thirty-eight times twenty-four equals nine hundred and twelve.

1 $10 \times 10 = 100$

2 $30 \times 20 = 600$

3 $50 \times 50 = \dots\dots\dots$

4 $38 \times 24 = \dots\dots\dots$

1 Look, think, and write:

انظر وفكر واكتب:



1. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?

في اليوم الرياضي طلبت السيدة أمال ١٢ صندوق من التي شيرت للطلاب. كل صندوق يحتوي على ١٨ تي شيرت. - كم عدد التي شيرت التي طلبتها أمال؟

$12 \times 18 = 216$



2. Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks?

تصنع نورا القبعات. هي جيدة جدًا في صنعها. تستطيع أن تصنع ٢٥ قبعة كل أسبوع. كم عدد القبعات التي تستطيع صنعها في ٤٨ أسبوع؟

$25 \times 48 = \dots\dots\dots$

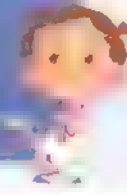
Did you know?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم في الصفر فالإجابة تكون صفر.



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Ahmed's mother is good at making
☐ a dresses and skirts ☐ b hats and T-shirts
☐ c galabeyas and scarfs ☐ d shorts and shoes
- Yesterday was a sports
☐ a month ☐ b day ☐ c year ☐ d festival
- Ahmed's mother made ten of T-shirts.
☐ a bags ☐ b books ☐ c boxes ☐ d suitcases
- Ahmed's mother gets a lot of
☐ a money ☐ b clothes ☐ c sports ☐ d food

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The makes shoes from leather.
☐ a shoemaker ☐ b vet ☐ c farmer ☐ d fisherman
- The shoemaker's wife made a meal.
☐ a delicious ☐ b amazed ☐ c tired ☐ d honest
- The shoemaker surprised.
☐ a left ☐ b looked ☐ c found ☐ d tried
- I went to the shop and on a new dress.
☐ a tried ☐ b lived ☐ c thanked ☐ d danced
- The shoemaker cut the leather to make new shoes.
☐ a off ☐ b out ☐ c in ☐ d to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

leather - workshop - elves - buy - shoes

(2024)

My grandfather was a shoemaker. He had a ❶ in the city. He made beautiful ❷ A lot of people went to ❸ their shoes from him. He was honest and made shoes from the best ❹





How do I look?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. a delicious - His - made - meal - wife.

2. tidied - I - yesterday - room - my.

3. and - I - his - lived - happily - wife.

4. amazed - and - wife - I - his - were.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Can I (**trying**) these shoes?

2. She couldn't (**believed**) her eyes.

3. He worked hard (**and**) he had no money.

4. The shoemaker made (**leather , small**) shoes.

(2024)

5. The shoemaker and his wife (**was**) amazed.

6 Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. they weren't poor again.

2. Did the shoemaker's wife make a delicious meal.

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The shoemaker and his wife

Guiding elements:

- kind and honest - new shoes



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing Project

Key vocabulary

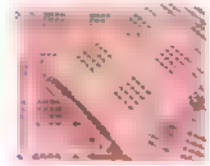
استمع إلى المفردات:



school uniform
زي مدرسي



short-sleeved shirt
قميص ذو أكمام قصيرة



checkered tablecloth
ذو مربعات (كاروهات)



tie
رابطة عنق (كرافتة)



trousers
بنطلون



skirt
جبة



socks
جورب (شراب)



leather shoes
حذاء جلد



sweater
صديري



jacket
جاكيت



sombrero
قبعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)

COUNTRIES

India

الهند

Japan

اليابان

Mexico

المكسيك

Finland

فنلندا



How do I look?

Other words

كلمات أخرى



light	فاتح	material	الخامة/ القماش
pale	باهت	size	الحجم / المقاس
dark	غامق	age	العمر
Mexican	مكسيكي	styles	أساليب / أشكال
during	أثناء	gold	ذهب
feasts	أعياد	silver	فضة
celebrations	احتفالات	bright colors	ألوان زاهية
smart	أنيق	linen	كتان



Adjectives الصفات

- تستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء.
- تأتي الصفات قبل الاسم التي تصفه أو بعد verb to be.
- عندما نستخدم أكثر من صفة نضعها في الترتيب الآتي:



- Dad bought me a **small new white galabeya**.
- He had to wear an **old orange hat**.
- The shoemaker made **small leather shoes**.



Study the following

- Our school uniform is really smart. زينا المدرسي أنيق جداً.
- It doesn't get very cold here. الطقس لا يصل للبرودة الشديدة هنا.
- We have to wear a tie every day. لابد أن نرتدي رابطة عنق (كرافتة) كل يوم.
- When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. - عندما يكون الطقس بارد، نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت.
- Mexican girls love bright colors. تحب البنات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية.
- A sombrero is a traditional Mexican hat. - السمبريرو هي قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.
- There are lots of different styles of sombrero. - هناك الكثير من الأشكال المختلفة للقبعات المكسيكية.
- My mother bought me a red cotton dress. اشترت لي والدتي فستان قطن أحمر.





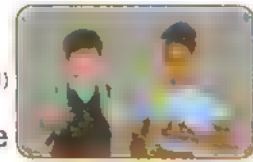
1

Look and Read: What school uniforms do you like?

انظر واقرأ. أي زي مدرسي موضح في صورة الطلاب؟

**Student A:**

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved⁽¹⁾ white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.



الزي المدرسي

١- قميص ذو أكمام

٢- كرافطة

٣- حطوط (تقليم)

٤- فانيج / ناهت

٥- كاروهات

٦- أبيج

٧- صدرى

Student B:

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie⁽²⁾ every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes⁽³⁾ on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale⁽⁴⁾ blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked⁽⁵⁾ skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

Student C:

Our school uniform is really smart⁽⁶⁾. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

Student D:

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

Student E:

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests⁽⁷⁾ or jackets. I like my uniform!



How do I look?

2

اقرأ المدونة السابقة مرة أخرى واكمل الجمل.

1. At Student A's school, students wear black shoes shoes.
2. At Student B's school, the girls wear a blue and white skirts skirts.
3. Students at Student C's school can wear gray gray skirts.
4. The boys at Student D's school wear green green socks.
5. The girls and boys at Student E's school all wear dark jackets jackets.

3

Read and add one more adjective to each row:

اقرأ واضف أكثر من صفة في كل صف.

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way:

عندما نستخدم الصفات نضعهم في الترتيب الصحيح

1	size	big, small,
2	age	old, new,
3	color	black, white,
4	material	cotton, linen,

4

ضع الصفات التي بين الاقواس في الترتيب الصحيح.

1. She wore a green cotton dress. (cotton, green)
2. He had to wear an old orange hat. (old, orange)
3. Dad bought me a new white galabeya. (new, white)
4. The shoemaker made small leather shoes. (small, leather)
5. I bought a new green jacket for the party. (new, green)



5. Watch and read. What do these people from these countries wear?

من أي البلاد هذه الملابس؟ انظر وصل.

Finland - India - Japan

1



2



3



6. Look and read. What is the Mexican girl wearing?

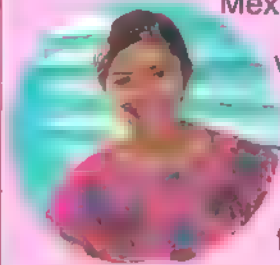
انظر وأقرأ. ماذا تسمى القبعة المكسيكية؟

CLOTHES IN MEXICO

These girls are wearing traditional ⁽²⁾ dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these ^{during feasts} ⁽³⁾ and ^{celebrations} ⁽⁴⁾.



Mexican girls love ^{bright colors} ⁽⁵⁾. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.



People in Mexico wear hats to ^{protect} ⁽⁶⁾ their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero -

it's a traditional Mexican hat.



There are lots of different ^{styles} ⁽⁷⁾ of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.



- ١- دولة المكسيك
- ٢- مكسيكي
- ٣- أثناء الأعياد
- ٤- احتفالات
- ٥- ألوان زاهية
- ٦- يحمي
- ٧- أشكال



Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. My favorite clothes are T-shirts and

- ☐ a sunglasses ☐ b skirts ☐ c galabeyas ☐ d shorts

2. I like my white socks in winter.

- ☐ a cotton ☐ b leather ☐ c plastic ☐ d striped

3. My is striped.

- ☐ a sweater ☐ b belt ☐ c crown ☐ d jacket

4. My favorite clothes are really

- ☐ a old ☐ b smart ☐ c delicious ☐ d special

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. People wear a sombrero in

- ☐ a Mexico ☐ b Japan ☐ c Finland ☐ d India

2. Hany's wearing a short shirt.

- ☐ a sleeving ☐ b sleeved ☐ c sleeves ☐ d sleeve

3. It gets very cold, so we have to wear

- ☐ a ties ☐ b shorts ☐ c sweaters ☐ d T-shirts

4. Our school uniform is made from

- ☐ a cotton ☐ b silver ☐ c gold ☐ d wood

5. We wear around our necks at school.

- ☐ a trousers ☐ b ties ☐ c skirts ☐ d shirts



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

celebrations - hats - dresses - gold - colorful

(2024)

Girls in Mexico wear traditional Mexican dresses. They are very ❶ . There are lots of colorful stripes on the ❷ . They wear these dresses during feasts and ❸ . Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear ❹ to protect their faces from the sun. It's a traditional Mexican hat.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. my - I - uniform - like - school.
2. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love.
3. wears - Rasha - shoes - leather - pair of - a new.
4. bought - my sister - a white - galabeya - cotton.

5 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. do you like your school uniform
2. these are my brother s favorite clothes.

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إثشائة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجااب آخر الوحدة

Your school uniform

Guiding questions

- 1- What's your school uniform?
- 2- What do boys and girls wear in your school?



Review



Clothes

ملابس



T-shirt

تي شيرت



sunglasses

نظارة شمس



swimming shorts

شورت سباحة (مايوه)



scarf

كوفية (شال)



sweater

بلوفر



sneakers

حذاء رياضي



galabeya

جلابية



necklace

عقد



pajamas

بيجامة



coat

بالطو



spotted

منقط



striped

مخطط / مقلّم



suit

بدلة



crown

تاج



vest

صديري



belt

حزام



tie

رابطة عنق (كرافتة)

Other words

كلمات أخرى



trip

رحلة قصيرة

suitcase

شنطة سفر

uniform

زي موحد

Egyptian clothing

ملابس مصرية

popular

شائع

costume

زي خاص

special festival

احتفال خاص

shoemaker

صانع احذية

elf (elves)

جن جنى صغير

kindness

عطف

celebrations

احتفالات

feasts

أعياد



Help your child revise Unit 3.

ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

ADJECTIVES

صفات

exciting	شيق	cool	رائع بارد
excited	متشوق - متحمس	comfortable	مريح
honest	أمين	amazed	مذهول
poor	فقير	surprised	مندهش
perfect	رائع	tired	متعب
special	مميز / خاص	hidden	غير ظاهر / خفي
popular	محبوب شائع شعبي	colorful	كثير الألوان / زاهي الألوان

Conjugation of verbs

تحويل

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
remember يتذكر	remembered	take يأخذ	took
pack يعبئ (شئ سفر)	packed	see يرى	saw
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	wear يرتدي	wore
protect يحمي	protected	tell يخبر	told
study يذاكر / يدرس	studied	leave يغادر / يترك	left
travel يسافر	traveled	say يقول	said
		buy يشتري	bought

will ('ll) + Inf. + فاعل (كل الضمان)

يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- She **ll pack** her suitcases tomorrow.

وهي النفي نستخدم:

will not (= won't) + Inf. + فاعل

- You **won't need** your coat.

1

Future
simple tense

زمن المستقبل
البسيط



How do I look?

وفي السؤال ب (هل.....؟) نستخدم،

Will + فاعل + inf.....?

- Will I need my scarf?

Yes, you **will**. إجابة مختصرة مثبتة،

No, you **won't**. إجابة مختصرة منفية،

نستخدم **to + inf.** للتعبير عن الغرض من فعل شيء،

- I went to the market **to buy** fruit.

2

To + inf.
(مصدر الفعل)
للتعبير عن
الغرض

1 Regular verbs

١- يعبر زمن الماضي البسيط عن شيء حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

٢- يتكون من، أفعال منتظمة.

يضاف للفعل (d) أو (ed) أو (ied)،

يضاف للفعل (d) إذا انتهى بحرف (e)،

Past simple tense
زمن الماضي
البسيط

move → moved celebrate → celebrated

يضاف للفعل (ed) إذا لم ينتهي بحرف (e)،

borrow → borrowed travel → traveled

يضاف للفعل (ied) إذا كان آخره حرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن،

study → studied cry → cried

2 Irregular verbs

٣- وهناك أفعال شاذة تحفظ تصريفاتها.

leave → left

buy → bought

- I bought some glasses yesterday.

- My teacher used a red pen.

تذكر ترتيب الصفات،

1

2

3

4

size + age + color + material

4

Adjectives
الصفات

- I'll wear a small new yellow hat.

- My sister bought a big new brown dress.



Answers to Texts

The shoemaker and the elves

- 1 Yesterday, I read a story about the elves and the shoemaker. The shoemaker and his wife lived in town. He was poor, but he was kind and honest. At night the elves came to his workshop to make new shoes. The shoemaker and his wife made new clothes for the elves and they lived happily.

Lessons 4&5

My school uniform

- 2 I like my school uniform. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. They have to wear a blue tie every day. The girls wear white shirts and blue skirts. When it's cold, we wear blue sweaters.

Activity - Unit 3

Galabeyas

- 3 Galabeyas are the most popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. They are usually made from cotton. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets and long sleeves. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.

Al-Azhar Test

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الاجابة الصحيحة:



1. Most men and boys wear _____ in Eid. (sports / galabeyas - pockets)
2. Galabeyas are made from _____. (cotton / metal - plastic)
3. Galabeyas have _____ sleeves. (short / long - colorful)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

wear - celebrate - striped - clothes

- A : What are your favorite _____ ?
B : I've got a _____ dress and a necklace.
A : When do you _____ them?
B : I wear them to _____ Sham El-Nessim.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

I'll go to a trip to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I'll pack my suitcase. I'll need to take my sunglasses and shorts because it will be hot and sunny. I'll take my favorite pajamas. I like wearing the ones with the stripes. I won't take my sweater. I'll stay there for seven days.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When will you go to Al Fayoum? _____
2. Why will you need sunglasses and shorts? _____

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. I won't take my _____. (shorts / pajamas - sweater)
4. I need the pajamas with the _____. (sweater / stripes - pockets)
5. I'll stay in Al Fayoum for a _____. (week / year - month)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. about my blue scarf?
☐ a Where ☐ b When ☐ c What
2. A: I need a coat? B: No, you won't.
☐ a When ☐ b Will ☐ c Would
3. My sister is wearing a dress.
☐ a spots ☐ b spotted ☐ c spotting
4. Yesterday, Hazem a new suitcase.
☐ a buy ☐ b bought ☐ c buys
5. Hisham used a pen his homework.
☐ a to write ☐ b writing ☐ c wrote

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. left - party - yesterday - Hoda - the.

2. shirts - does - Adel - _____ - pack?

3. need - a coat - _____ - and - I - a scarf?

4. take - my - jacket - _____ - blue - cotton.

5. wants - Egyptian - _____ - clothes - to buy.



Activities

3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Ayman went to the shops with his
☐ a mother ☐ b father ☐ c friend ☐ d brother
- Ayman went to the shop to buy a
☐ a sweater ☐ b uniform ☐ c shirt ☐ d scarf
- Girls wear dark skirts.
☐ a blue ☐ b green ☐ c red ☐ d brown
- Ayman liked his school
☐ a teachers ☐ b books ☐ c bags ☐ d uniform

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- He is kind and All people love him.
☐ a ugly ☐ b lazy ☐ c angry ☐ d honest
- I wore sunglasses to protect my
☐ a ears ☐ b eyes ☐ c hands ☐ d legs
- We wear to play football.
☐ a suits ☐ b goggles ☐ c sneakers ☐ d rackets
- When it's hot, I wear
☐ a shoes ☐ b a jacket ☐ c shorts ☐ d boots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wear - have - skirts - sleeved - eat

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short ❶ white shirt. The girls wear blue ❷ and the boys wear blue trousers. We all ❸ to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here. But when it is cold, we can ❹ our blue sweaters.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister's birthday party was yesterday. My sister wore a white beautiful dress. She had a crown on her head. She looked like a princess. She had white gloves

on her hands. There was a gold necklace around her neck. I wore a black suit and black leather shoes. All the people at the party wore nice clothes. We had delicious meals. We sang and danced happily. The party finished at twelve o'clock at night.

عشية - الساعة ١٢ - المنتهى (2024)

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. It was my sister's
☐ wedding ☐ birthday ☐ test ☐ address
2. The party finished at o'clock.
☐ twelve ☐ nine ☐ eleven ☐ ten

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the sister look like?
4. What did the sister wear?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة:

1. made - leather - The - shoes - shoemaker.
2. did - pack - What - for - you - the holiday?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Sameh studied hard to (got) good grades.
2. I (buy) some clothes yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we won't need to take sweaters.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

long robe - hidden pockets



Review 1



Objectives of Review 1

أهداف المراجعة الأولى

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1- 3.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطلاب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 3:

- To learn about a healthier life.

- يتعلم الطالب عن حياة أفضل صحياً.

Lesson 5

Units 1 , 2 & 3

استمع و اشر

استمع إلى النص



- | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1- beans | 2- pineapple | 3- chocolate |
| 4- squash | 5- mix | 6- pour |
| 7- football | 8- kung fu | 9- pajamas |
| 10- sweater | 11- swimming shorts | 12- scarf |
| 13- sunglasses | 14- necklace | 15- sneakers |

Start



1-



2-



3-



6-



5-



4-



7-



8-



9-



12-



11-



10-



13-



14-



15-

Finish

Review



1. Look and write.

أنظر واكتب (كالمثال).

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

You mix the
eggs and the
flour to make
pizza.



I've got
striped
pajamas.



1. Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. It's **healthy** / **unhealthy** to eat a balanced diet.
2. I need new swimming **boots** / **goggles** for my swimming lessons.
3. We wear new **galabeyas** / **belts** for Eid festivals.
4. Too many **emissions** / **greenhouses** from cars can cause pollution.
5. I'm so hot! Let's sit in the **shade** / **sun**.
6. I had an awful **jigsaw** / **nightmare**. I dreamed that I lost my cat!



4. Make sentences in the past simple:

كوّن جملًا باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط.

1. Mom / cook / molokhia / last Friday

Mom cooked molokhia last Friday.

2. Salma / go / to the store / with her mom

Salma went to the store with her mom.

3. My / grandma / travel / Port Said / last weekend

4. I / get / a new phone / a week ago



Lesson 2

Units 1 , 2 & 3

1 Listen and write

استمع وضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة :

تعالوا نكتب

استمع إلى النص



1- sneakers

2- tennis lessons

3- oranges

4- carrots

5- pajamas

6- swimming

Mom : Are you ready, Mariam? We need to buy a lot of things in town.

Mariam : Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new .

Mom : Oh, yes, for your lessons next week. I need to get food from the market, too. We need and . Oh, and I also need to buy some new for Tarek. His are too small.

Mariam : Do we have time to go today, Mom?

Mom : Not today, Mariam. But we can go on the weekend.

2 Listen again and answer:

استمع مرة أخرى للنص السابق وأجب :

1. What clothes do Mom and Mariam need to buy? They need to buy sneakers
2. What fruit does Mom need to buy? She needs to buy oranges
3. What vegetables does Mom need to buy?
4. Can Mariam go swimming today?

3

ماذا فعلت مایسة بالأمس؟ انظر واكتب :

1. Maysa got up at 6 am.

2. Maysa went to school at eight o'clock

3. _____

4. _____

1



2



3



4



Lesson 3

Units 1 , 2 & 3

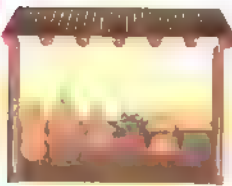
Look at the pictures and discuss:

اعمل في مجموعات. فكر كيف تكون بصحة أفضل. انظر للصورة وناقش.

Key vocabulary

healthier life	حياة صحية	perhaps	ربما
include	بشتمل على	not only	ليس فقط
meals	وجبات	mean	يقصد - يعني
junk food / fast food	طعام يحتوي علي سكريات ودهون أكثر	fewer cars	سيارات أقل
		less pollution	تلوث أقل

1



2



3



4



5



6

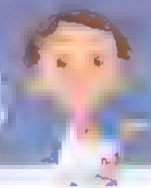


How can we live a healthier life?

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious.

Junk food isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football? Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends!

Activities on Units 1, 2 & 3



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن نستمع الآن



- My favorite recipe today is
☐ a lentils ☐ b koshari ☐ c basbousa ☐ d molokhia
- I the ingredients by hand.
☐ a boil ☐ b mix ☐ c share ☐ d bake
- I bake the basbousa in the for 30 minutes.
☐ a teaspoon ☐ b knife ☐ c oven ☐ d cupboard
- I make the for about 10 minutes.
☐ a syrup ☐ b ingredients ☐ c recipe ☐ d dessert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My shoes are made of
☐ a feather ☐ b leather ☐ c wood ☐ d wool
- I play on a small court with walls all round.
☐ a football ☐ b swimming ☐ c karate ☐ d squash
- We can play tennis at the tennis
☐ a court ☐ b pitch ☐ c pool ☐ d house
- I bought to keep me warm.
☐ a shorts ☐ b glasses ☐ c coats ☐ d skirts

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

uniform - dark - dress - pockets - tie

My name's Amir. At school, we have to wear a ① I have to wear a ② blue shirt and brown trousers. We have to wear a ③ Girls have to wear a brown ④



Review

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hedaya won the ... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.
☐ a metal ☒ b gold ☐ c bronze ☐ d silver
- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian ... player.
☐ a squash ☒ b taekwondo ☐ c karate ☐ d tennis

B- Answer the following questions:

- When was Hedaya Malak born?
- What did Hedaya win at the age of fourteen?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- usually - What - you - wear - do?
- squash - See - good at - very - playing.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- (Are) there any sugar in the glass?
- Ashraf is good at (plays) squash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

What will amira do next

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Football

Numbers of players : 11 players

Place : Club

Football

Myself and others

Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.

= يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة.

2. Learn about Elephantine Island.

= يعرف الطالب معلومات عن جزيرة الفنتين (فيله) (بمدينة أسوان).

3. Use sentences in the past continuous.

= يستخدم الطالب عبارات أو جمل في زمن الماضي المستمر.

4. Learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.

= يتعلم الطالب ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.

5. Learn how to say three consonants together.

= يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معاً.

6. Learn to correct spelling mistakes.

= يتعلم الطالب أن يصحح أخطاؤه الإملائية.

7. Write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

= يكتب الطالب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.

Lesson 1

My visit to Elephantine Island

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



جبل



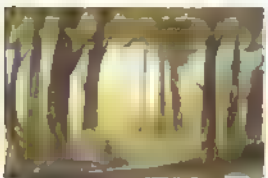
بحيرة



شلل



جزيرة



غابة



شعاب مرجانية



حديقة النباتات بأسوان



معبد فيلة

sunset

غروب الشمس

rare

نادر

Tombs of the Nobles

مقابر النبلاء

reign

فترة حكم

Other words

أخرى



shape

شكل

trip

رحلة قصيرة

history

تاريخ

visit (n)

زيارة

calendar

نتيجة (تقويم)

walk (n)

تمشية

traffic

المركبات في حركة المرور

particularly

خصوصاً

city

مدينة كبيرة

felucca

مركب شراعي (فلوكة)

town

مدينة صغيرة

full of

مليء بـ

leather

جلد مذبوغ

ADJECTIVES

صفات

fantastic

رائع

decorated

مزخرف / مزين

calm / quiet

هادئ

famous

مشهور



Conjugation of verbs

المزمنة

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
miss	يفتقد شخص	missed		understand	يفهم	understood	
try	يحاول	tried		find	يجد	found	
walk	يسير (يمشي)	walked		go	يذهب	went	

Study the following

- 1 The Aswan Museum is full of history. - جزيرة الإيفنتين (فيله) تزخر بالتاريخ.
- 2 There's lots to see. - هناك الكثير لتراه.
- 3 It's the most fantastic place! - إنها المكان الأكثر روعة.
- 4 It's the oldest part of Aswan. - إنها أقدم جزء في مدينة أسوان.
- 5 We went to Aswan Museum. - ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان.
- 6 We can go for long walks. - يمكننا التمشية لمسافات طويلة.
- 7 I was traveling by boat. - كنت مسافرًا بالقارب.
- 8 Can't wait to see you soon. - لا أطيع الانتظار لاراك قريبًا.
- 9 The views are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. - أوقات غروب الشمس رائعة وخصوصًا وأنت في مركب شراعي.
- 10 The hotel has beautiful brightly decorated houses. - لديهم منازل جميلة ومزينة بألوان زاهية.
- 11 We're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles. - سوف نمشي إلى مقابر النبلاء.



Looking after our world

1 Listen and read the postcard Nagwa has written to Dalia.

استمع واقرأ البطاقة البريدية. أين ذهبت نجوى؟

Transcript



استمع إلى النص



Hi Dalia!

How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on **Elephantine Island** and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's **lots** to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the **shape**!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the **Aswan Museum**. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very **rare** calendar from the **reign** of **Thutmose III**.

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there



Temple of Philae

are lots of trees, so it's quite green.

The **sunsets** are fantastic, particularly from a felucca.

We were walking in one of the **Aswan villages**

this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the **Tombs of the Pharaohs** through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa



Aswan Botanical Garden

١- حديقة النباتات بأسوان

٢- معبد فيله

٣- جزيرة اليعاقبة

٤- متحف أسوان

٥- تحتمس الثالث

٦- قرى نوبية

٧- مقابر النبلاء

2 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع (للنص السابق) مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Did Nagwa have a good trip? - -

2. Why is she feeling sad? - - -

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

Look at these rocks from the White Desert. What can you see? People often call them 'chicken and mushroom' rocks!

انظر إلى هذه الصخور من الصحراء البيضاء ماذا ترى؟ غالبًا ما يطلق عليها الناس صخور الدجاج والفطر!



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Alexandria is a big city in the of Egypt.
☐ a south ☐ b north ☐ c east ☐ d west
- Alexandria has beautiful
☐ a schools ☐ b buildings ☐ c gardens ☐ d beaches
- Many people come to Alexandria in the
☐ a summer ☐ b winter ☐ c spring ☐ d fall
- The people in Alexandria are
☐ a unkind ☐ b friendly ☐ c excited ☐ d healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- There is no , so the island is very quiet.
☐ a traffic ☐ b farms ☐ c rivers ☐ d buildings
 (2024)
- Alexandria is a
☐ a town ☐ b village ☐ c country ☐ d city
 (2024)
- We could climb up the high yesterday.
☐ a lake ☐ b mountain ☐ c forest ☐ d island
 (2024)
- The of Philae is in Aswan.
☐ a pyramid ☐ b temple ☐ c city ☐ d postcard
 (2024) إدارة سفيطوط
- In the evening, I like to see the
☐ a sunburn ☐ b sunrise ☐ c sunset ☐ d sunshine
 (2024)
- Elephantine is in Aswan.
☐ a Island ☐ b Country ☐ c Town ☐ d City
 (2024) الشريعة - إدارة شمس القناطر
- These coins are expensive because they are
☐ a rare ☐ b terrible ☐ c poor ☐ d cheap





Looking after our world

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

villagers - sunsets - south - temple - quiet

Aswan is a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very **1** ... and the air is clean. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees. So it is quite green. The **2** ... are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. The Nubian **3** ... have beautiful brightly decorated houses. You can go for walks to the tombs of the Nobles. Aswan is a very special place in the **4** ... of Egypt.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. in - Aswan - live - Do - you? (2020)
2. traveling - I - by - was - boat.
3. live - you - a city - Do - in?
4. most - the - It's - place - fantastic.
5. are - The - fascinating - buildings.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I m missing you
2. i met noha yesterday.

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجااب آخر الوحدة

Your city (Aswan)

Guiding phrases

fantastic town - no traffic



Lesson 9

What were you doing?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



arrive at school

يصل إلى المدرسة

study English

يدرس اللغة الإنجليزية

get up

يستيقظ

have a great time

يستمتع بوقت رائع

have lunch

يتناول طعام الغداء

swim in the sea

يسبح في البحر

الاستفهام

الاستفهام

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شيء حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي.

يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلي:

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + ② was + ③ + verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع + ② were + ③ + verb + ing

Past continuous
زمن الماضي المستمر

- I **was traveling** by boat to the island.

- We **were trying** to understand the lesson.

② يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

① (كلمة استفهام) + ② { was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد } + ③ + verb + ing...?
④ { were + you / we / they / اسم جمع }

What **were** you **doing**?

ماذا كنت تفعل؟

I **was** **playing** tennis.

الاستفهام

Question

- **Was** she **listening** to music?

- Yes, she **was**.

- No, she **wasn't**.

- **Were** they **making** fatta?

- Yes, they **were**.

- No, they **weren't**.

② لنفي الفعل في زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + ② was + ③ not + verb + ing.
④ You / We / They / اسم جمع + ② were + ③ not + verb + ing.

النفي

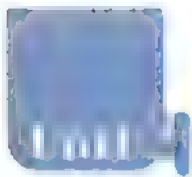
Negative

- I **was not** **swimming** in the sea.

- We **were not** **listening** to music.

(was not = **wasn't**)

(were not = **weren't**)



Looking after our world

هذا الصباح **this morning** عندما **when** أثناء / بينما **while / as**

ماضي بسيط → ماضي مستمر **while / as**

ماضي مستمر → ماضي بسيط **when**

- While we were looking at old things, we found a rare calendar.

- We were looking at old things when we found a rare calendar.

- عند إضافة (ing) للفعل في الماضي المستمر يلاحظ الآتي:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) غير منطوقه تحذف (e) ويضاف (ing).

make → **making** / **take** → **taking**

see → **seeing** / **be** → **being** لكن لاحظ.

٢. عند انتهاء الفعل بـ حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاعف الحرف الساكن

الآخر ويضاف بعده (ing).

swim → **swimming** / **shop** → **shopping**

1 Read and choose:

اقرأ واختر:

1. We were trying trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name.
2. I were was walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.

أكمل الجدول عن زمن الماضي المستمر بالكلمات الآتية:

she - Was - were

I	was	listening to the radio.
you / we / they	(1) -----	making a cake.
he / ----- / it	was	swimming in the sea.

Question

Was	I	listening to music?
Were	you / we / they	making fatta?
(3) -----	he / she / it	swimming in a lake?

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and **stopped** | **continued** **over a period of time** in the past.

4

انظر واكتب. استخدم زمن الماضي المستمر:

1. The fox **was sleeping** (sleep).
2. The fish (swim).
3. The tiger (drink) water.
4. The people (walk).
5. I (watch) everyone.
6. We (have) a great time.
7. the cat (run)?

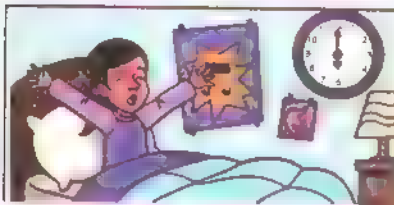


5

Use the phrases in the box:

ماذا كانت تفعل مني في اوقات مختلفة امس؟ استخدم العبارات الآتية:

arrive at school - get up - have lunch - study English



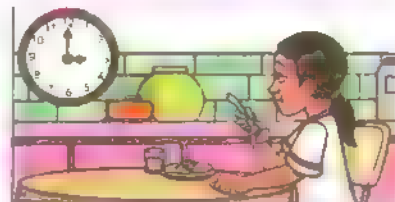
1 6 am: She **was getting up**



2 8 am:



3 10 am:



4 3 pm:





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We were a good time at the zoo.

- ☒ a walking ☒ b having ☒ c arriving ☒ d making

2. The tiger was water.

- ☒ a drinking ☒ b swimming ☒ c sleeping ☒ d studying

3. What was Hoda doing at times?

- ☒ a unhealthy ☒ b dirty ☒ c different ☒ d polluted

4. They were by boat to the island.

- ☒ a listening ☒ b traveling ☒ c having ☒ d doing

5. I was making

- ☒ a English ☒ b fatta ☒ c school ☒ d water

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. sleeping - The - was - fox.

2. having - a great - We - time - were.

3. in - The - swimming - was - the sea - fish.

4. they - Were - lunch - making? - - - -

5. doing - at - Was - you - 9 pm - were? - - - -

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She was (**cooked**) at 6 pm yesterday.

(2024)

2. While I (**sleep**), my father came.

3. (**Did**) you listening to music?

4. Were they (**walk**) in the park at 5 pm?

5. When he (**meets**) his friend, he was going to school.

6. (**Were**) he swimming in the lake ?



7. Were (he) making fatha ?
8. We were (have) a great time at the park.
9. (Were) the tiger running?
10. At 12 am, I (were not) studying. I was sleeping.
11. Were the boys (play) football?
12. My mom was (shops) at the market at 6 p.m.

4 Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. was Dalia studying English
.....
2. i was visiting a Nubian village
.....

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

- 1- Where were you at 7 a.m yesterday?
- 2- Who was with you?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	hotel	فندق
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	wildlife	الحياة البرية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	pollution	التلوث
environment	البيئة	dive (d)	يفطس

Other words



local people	السكان المحليون	oasis (oases)	واحة (واحات)
journey	رحلة طويلة	UNESCO *	منظمة اليونسكو
culture	ثقافة / حضارة	Eco village	قرية بها سياحة بيئية
historical places	أماكن تاريخية	pros	مميزات
exciting	مثير	cons	عيوب
project	مشروع	comfortable	مريح
presenter	مقدم برامج	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي		

تعريفات

Eco-tourism

السياحة البيئية

It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

UNESCO · United Nation Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization.

منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية والعلم والثقافة.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
create يخلق / ينشئ	created	pay يدفع مالا	paid
damage يدمر / يتلف	damaged	see يفهم - يرى	saw
relate to يتعلق بـ	related to	learn يتعلم	learnt
work out يستنتج	worked out	dive يغطس	dove / dived
preserve يحفظ	preserved		

يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر **by - in - on** مع وسائل

المواصلات كالآتي:

by

by - in - on

مع وسائل
المواصلات

- **by** + وسيلة مواصلات (تيسر بينهما فاصل)
- **by car - by train - by bus - etc.....**

- ولكن نقول (**on foot**) بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

in - on

- **in** + (a / an / the / my..... وبينهما فاصل) وسيلة مواصلات
- نستخدم (**in**) مع وسيلة مواصلات التي لا يمكن المشي داخلها .
- **in a / my car - in a / the taxi**
- **on** + (بينهما فاصل) وسيلة مواصلات
- نستخدم (**on**) مع وسائل مواصلات التي يمكن المشي داخلها .
- **on the bus - on the train**

- لاحظ: **on my bike / horse**



Study the following

- 1 Tourism gives jobs for local people. - توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.
- 2 Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. - تسبب السياحة الكثير من غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون نتيجة الرحلات الجوية.
- 3 Tourism helps people learn about new cultures. - تساعد السياحة الناس على التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.
- 4 Tourism damages the natural environment. - تضر السياحة بالبيئة الطبيعية.
- 5 Tourism damages historical places or monuments. - تضر السياحة بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.
- 6 Eco-tourism looks after the environment. - تعتني السياحة البيئية بالبيئة.
- 7 Eco-tourism is not as comfortable as normal tourism. - السياحة البيئية ليست مريحة مثل السياحة العادية.
- 8 Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes. - يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالدراجات.
- 9 Eco-tourists like to stay in small local hotels. - يحب السياح البيئيون الإقامة في فنادق محلية صغيرة.
- 10 Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture. - يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

1 Think about tourism. Check (✓) the good things and cross (x) the bad things:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام فوائد السياحة وعلامة (x) أمام أضرارها.

Tourism...

1. gives jobs for local people.
2. creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
3. helps people learn about new cultures.
4. damages the natural environment.
5. damages historical places or monuments.





Listen to Sherif. What is eco-tourism?

استمع إلى شريف. ما هي السياحة البيئية؟

Transcript



استمع إلى النص



Presenter : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a guide in Hurgada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

Sherif : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

Presenter : How does it help the environment and people?

Sherif : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution⁽⁶⁾ planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

Presenter : I see. Where do they stay?

Sherif : They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Presenter : What do they do when they travel?

Sherif : They like to learn about environmental projects and local culture.

Presenter : Can you give me an example?

Sherif : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

Presenter : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

السياحة البيئية

- ١- مرشد سياحي
- ٢- مدينة العردقة
- ٣- السياحة البيئية
- ٤- البيئة
- ٥- السياحون البيئيون
- ٦- التلوث
- ٧- فنادق
- ٨- الحياة البرية
- المحلية
- ٩- حفظ/ حماية



Looking after our world



استمع وأكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التي بالاقطار.



استمع إلى النص.

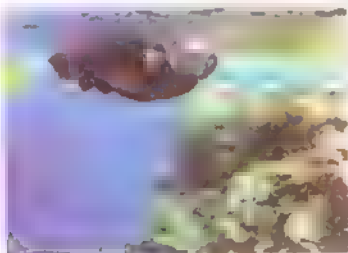


- 1- **Sherif** : Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.
- 2 - **Sherif** : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.
- 3- **Sherif** : They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.
- 4- **Sherif** : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.
- 5 - **Sherif** : Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.
- 6- **Sherif** : Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

coral - dive - environment - hotels - wildlife - pollution

1. Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the **environment** and helps local people.
2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the **pollution** that planes cause.
3. They stay in small, local **hotels** or pay to stay in people's houses.
4. They like to learn about local **wildlife** projects and local culture.
5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the **coral** reefs.
6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can **dive**.

1



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef

2



Siwa Oasis Tourism
UNESCO Eco Village



Lektion 3

PART 2

Pronunciation

- في هذا الدرس يقوم الطالب بالتعرف علي بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها وهذه نماذج منها :

استمع إلى المفردات



str /str/



string حبل



strong قوي



street شارع



strawberry

ثمرة فراولة

scr /skr/



scratch
يخدش (يخربش)



ew
مسمار قلاووظ
(بورمة)



screen شاشة



scream يصرخ

- في الكلمات السابقة ينطق حرف (s) كما هو (س) وينطق حرف (c) مثل نطق حرف (k).

thr /θr/



throat
حلقوم (حلق)



throne عرش



three ثلاثة



throw
يرمي / يلقي

- لاحظ نطق (th) في الكلمات السابقة مثل حرف (ث)

Other words

كلمات أخرى

ice skating

التزلج علي الجليد

belt

حزام

chocolate

شيكولاتة

sneakers

حذاء رياضي

pearl

لؤلؤ





Looking after our world



اقرأ واكتب. ثم استمع وردد

استمع إلى النص:



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

The king sat on his ① throne eating ② on a ③ He was ④ his ⑤ He heard a ⑥ A ⑦ man came to help.



in the other words:

انظر وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات الصحيحة. قم بتصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية في الكلمات الأخرى

①



milc

milk

②



cake

③



chokolate

④



ise skating

⑤



lakke

⑥



beans

⑦



belt

⑧



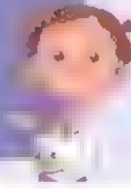
perls

⑨



sneekers

Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hala's birthday was

- ☐ a yesterday ☐ b today ☐ c last week ☐ d tonight

2. Hala's mom made a nice cake.

- ☐ a apple ☐ b strawberry ☐ c orange ☐ d banana

3. Hala's friends gave her nice

- ☐ a presents ☐ b cakes ☐ c games ☐ d clothes

4. Hala and her friends played

- ☐ a football ☐ b matches ☐ c video games ☐ d tennis

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists stay in small, local

(2024)

- ☐ a huts ☐ b shapes ☐ c emissions ☐ d hotels

2. Eco-tourism is for the environment.

(2024)

- ☐ a bad ☐ b harmful ☐ c hard ☐ d helpful

3. Tourists in the Red Sea.

(2024)

- ☐ a plant ☐ b dive ☐ c build ☐ d drive

4. Eco-tourism looks the environment.

(2024)

- ☐ a up ☐ b at ☐ c for ☐ d after

5. I can carry this heavy bag. I'm

- ☐ a weak ☐ b strong ☐ c strange ☐ d string

6. Eco-tourists like to travel ... bikes.

- ☐ a in ☐ b by ☐ c at ☐ d of

7. There are many coral in the Red Sea.

- ☐ a loaves ☐ b leaves ☐ c lives ☐ d reefs

8. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the that planes cause.

- ☐ a pollution ☐ b journey ☐ c pros ☐ d comfortable

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





Looking after our world

9. My favorite fruit is the

☐ straw

☐ strawberry

☐ strong

☐ screw

10. Eco-tourists like to learn about projects and local culture.

☐ energy

☐ hotel

☐ journey

☐ wildlife

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plane - pollution - exciting - local - hotels

Eco-tourism is important in our life. It looks after the environment and helps

..... people. Eco-tourism don't like to travel by because of the that planes cause. They stay in small or pay to stay in people's houses.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. is - tour - Sherif - our - guide.

2. have - We - some - projects - nice.

3. does - it - It - environment - help?

4. He - on - sat - throne - his.

5. gives - local - It - for - jobs - people.

(2024)

6. like - to - local - It - learn - about - culture.

(2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Tourists come to the Red sea to dive

2. How does eco-tourism help egypt

Lessons 4 & 5

Taba: My favorite eco-resort Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	wildlife	حياة برية
eco-lodges	نزل بيئية / أماكن سكن صديقة للبيئة		

Holiday Activities

أنشطة الإجازة



hiking	السير لمسافات طويلة	diving	الغطس
camping	إقامة المعسكرات (التخييم)		

ADJECTIVES

صفات



excellent	ممتاز	friendly	ودود
fascinating	مبهر / خلاب	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
fantastic	رائع	cool	لطيف
perfect	تام / كامل	main	أساسي / رئيسي
round	مستدير	rare	نادر

Other words

كلمات أخرى



valley	وادي	structure	بناء
Nubian ibex	حيوان الوعل النوبي	building	مبنى
camp	مخيم / معسكر	hut	كوخ
eco-destination	مقصد بيئي وجهة بيئية	way of life	أسلوب الحياة



Study the following

- 1 Taba is an excellent example where eco-tourism works well.
- تُعد طابا نموذجًا ممتازًا حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل جيدًا.
- 2 You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba.
- يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا.
- 3 The buildings are fascinating.
- المباني مبهرة.
- 4 Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges.
- يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة في المخيمات والتزل البيئية.
- 5 You can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea in Taba.
- يمكنك أن تجد وديان وجبال وصحراء وبحر في طابا.
- 6 The local people are very friendly.
- السكان المحليون ودودون جدًا.
- 7 If you like history, there is lots in Taba.
- إذا كنت تحب التاريخ فيوجد في طابا الكثير من الأشياء التاريخية.
- 8 You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!
- يمكن أن تجد كل ما يتعلق بإجازة رائعة في طابا.
- 9 Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt.
- تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر.
- 10 We have wonderful fish, birds and animals.
- لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.





1

Look and read. Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

انظر واقرأ. لماذا تعد طابا مدينة جيدة للسياحة البيئية؟

استمع إلى النص.



Eco-tourism in Egypt

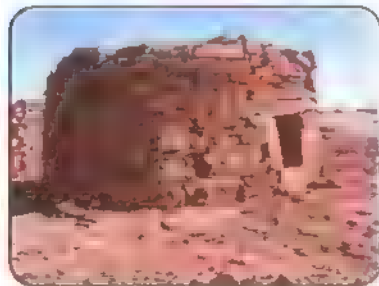
Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.

You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds.

This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis,



Nawamis Structure -
Sinai, Egypt

a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

مواقع سياحية بيئية

- ١- ممرات
- ٢- وديان
- ٣- صحراء
- ٤- حياة برية
- ٥- حيوان الوعل النوبي
- ٦- ودوبيين
- ٧- نوااميس (قرية بدوية)
- ٨- منهر / طلاب
- ٩- السير لمسافات طويلة
- ١٠- إقامة المعسكرات / التحبير
- ١١- معسكرات
- ١٢- نزل بيئي



Looking after our world

Perfect⁽¹⁾ eco-tourism in Egypt



Meet the local people
Talk to them about their
way of life ⁽²⁾.



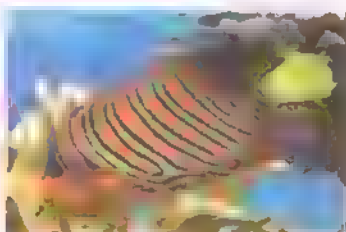
Enjoy the local
Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old
village.



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike⁽⁴⁾, swim, and dive.



Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and .



Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic
wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful
fish, birds, and animals.

الأسلوب

- ١- رأي
- ٢- أسلوب حياة
- ٣- ثقافة
- ٤- يسير لمسافات طويلة
- ٥- صديق للبيئة

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hurghada is a/an

- ☐ a tourism ☐ b eco-resort ☐ c tourist ☐ d electricity

2. The buildings in Taba are

- ☐ a fascinating ☐ b friendly ☐ c kind ☐ d health

3. Taba is a/an eco-resort.

- ☐ a round ☐ b harmful ☐ c bad ☐ d excellent

4. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, and camping.

- ☐ a hiking ☐ b building ☐ c writing ☐ d reading

5. In Taba, you can stay in

- ☐ a valleys ☐ b eco-lodges ☐ c tourism ☐ d wildlife

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed's holiday was fantastic. He spent it in Taba. Taba is a famous and beautiful place. Ahmed arrived there at eleven thirty. His cousins were waiting for him at the bus stop. They took him home. There, he met his uncle and his uncle's wife. They spent that day at home. The next day, they went to the beach and enjoyed swimming and playing. Ahmed saw a lot of tourists from different countries. Tourists always come to Taba to enjoy the blue sea and the coral reefs. Ahmed was very happy because he enjoyed that week very much.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed spent with his uncle in Taba.

- ☐ a two weeks ☐ b a month ☐ c a week ☐ d a day

2. Ahmed arrived at the bus stop at Taba at

- ☐ a 11.30 ☐ b 11.00 ☐ c 7.30 ☐ d 12.30

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How did Ahmed go to Taba?

4. Why do tourists like to visit Taba?



Looking after our world

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. very - The - friendly - are - people.

الجميلة - جارة مينا - (2024)

2. are - the - fascinating - buildings.

3. an - eco-resort - excellent - is - eco-resort.

4. camps - stay - can - in - in.

5. wildlife - can - find - fantastic - Taba - in - the.

4 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. you can find everything in taba

2. would you like to stay in a hotel

5 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

- exciting idea

- helpful for environment

Review

Key vocabulary



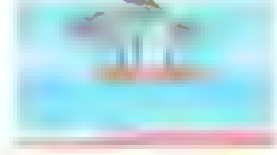
mountain جبل



lake بحيرة



شلال



جزيرة



غابة



coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية



حديقة النباتات بأسوان



معبد فيلة

lots	الكثير	rare	نادر
sunset	غروب الشمس	reign	فترة حُكم
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	pollution	التلوث
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	dive (d)	ينغس
eco-resort	متجع بيئي	wildlife	حياة برية
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	hotel	فندق
environment	البيئة	felucca	مركب شراحي (فلوكة)

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن شئ حدث واستمر في فترة زمنية في الماضي.

يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلي :

① I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was** } ② + verb + **ing**
③ You / We / They / اسم جمع + **were** }

Past continuous
زمن الماضي المستمر

- The atmosphere **was changing** a little.

9 يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر في الاستفهام كالآتي:

1 2 3 4
(كلمة استفهام) + { **was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد** } + **verb+ing. ?**
{ **were + you / we / they / اسم جمع** }

A What **were** you **having**?

B : I **was** **having** lunch.

- **Were** you **watching** TV? - Yes, I **was**. - No, I **wasn't**.

• لنفي الفعل في زمن الماضي المستمر نضع (not) بين (was / were) والفعل:

1 2 3 4
I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was** } **not + verb + ing.**
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **were** }

- We **were not** **having** a good time.

was not = wasn't **were not = weren't**

هذا الصباح **this morning** عندما **when** أثناء / بينما **while / as**

while / as → ماضي بسيط → ماضي مستمر
when → ماضي بسيط → ماضي مستمر

• يمكن أن نستخدم حروف الجر **by - in - on** مع وسائل المواصلات كالآتي:

by

وسيلة مواصلات (ليس بينهما فاصل) + **by**
by car - by train - by bus - etc.....

- ولكن نقول (**on foot**) بمعنى (سيرًا على الأقدام).

2
by - in - on
مع وسائل
المواصلات

(**in - on**)

وسيلة مواصلات + (وبينهما فاصل **a / an / the / my.....**) + **in**

- نستخدم (**in**) مع وسيلة مواصلات التي لا يمكن المشي داخلها.

- **in a / my car - in a / the taxi**

وسيلة مواصلات + (بينهما فاصل) + **on**

- نستخدم (**on**) مع وسائل مواصلات التي يمكن المشي داخلها.

- **on the bus - on the train**

on my bike / horse - لاحظ،



Answers to Texts

Lesson 1

Yesterday's Aswan

- 1 I live in Aswan. It's a fantastic city. There's lots to see there. It has museums and temples. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. You can go on the Nile by boats. I love it very much.

Lesson 2

My Family's Holiday

- 2 Yesterday was a holiday. At 7 am, I was getting up. At 8 am, I was having my breakfast with my family. At 10 am, I was watching TV with my father. At 3 pm, I was having lunch. It was a great day. All my family were having a great time.

Lesson 3

Eco-tourism in Egypt

- 3 Eco-tourism is an exciting idea in Egypt. It's helpful for the environment. Eco-tourists like to travel by bikes. They stay in small local hotels. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

Lesson 4

My Favorite Eco-resort (Taba)

- 4 Taba is my favorite eco-resort. I can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. I can find fantastic wildlife, too. I can enjoy the environment. I can do a lot of activities. I like helping tourists.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hani does a lot of _____ every day. (homework - activities - housework)
2. Hani was _____ at 6 am. (sleeping - eating - playing)
3. Rasha was _____ the flowers in the garden. (watering - planting - watching)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

helps - stay - hotels - pros

- A : What are the _____ of eco-tourism?
- B : It _____ the environment.
- A : Where can eco-tourists _____ ?
- B : In small, local _____ and people's houses.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went to Taba with my father and my mother. Taba is a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. When did you go to Taba? - - - - -
2. Who did you go to Taba with? - - - - -

B- Choose the right answer:

3. Taba is a part of _____. (Egypt - England - Libya)



4. You can find valleys and the in Taba.

(string - seed - sea)

5. Eco-tourism works in Taba.

(will - well - bad)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. They were at photos.

☐ a look

☐ b looked

☐ c looking

2. Samy can the ball to his friend, Gamal.

☐ a throw

☐ b scream

☐ c try

3. The Elephantine Island is full of

☐ a sunburn

☐ b history

☐ c traffic

4. A: do you stay? B: In a hotel.

☐ a What

☐ b Who

☐ c Where

5. I go to school foot.

☐ a by

☐ b in

☐ c on

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. can - stay - They - camps - in.

2. am - Island - on - I - Elephantine.

3. are - people - the - friendly - local.

4. was - listening - music - Hisham - to.

5. for - the - jobs - people - gives - local.





Activities Unit 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

أختر الإجابة الصحيحة



- Sara went to the Elephantine last weekend. (2024)
☐ a Sea ☐ b Island ☐ c Farm ☐ d City
- Elephantine Island is in
☐ a Luxor ☐ b Cairo ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d Aswan
- Sara visited to see the old things.
☐ a hospital ☐ b school ☐ c museum ☐ d bank
- She went on a ... trip on the island.
☐ a plane ☐ b boat ☐ c truck ☐ d bike

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Eco-tourists stay in small, local
☐ a huts ☐ b pools ☐ c shapes ☐ d emissions
- helps people learn about new culture.
☐ a Pollution ☐ b Farming ☐ c Tourism ☐ d Atmosphere
- The Elephantine Island is of history.
☐ a full ☐ b fall ☐ c fill ☐ d fell
- A tourist was diving in the Red Sea near a reef.
☐ a coat ☐ b coral ☐ c eco ☐ d project

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Red - dive - damaging - eco-resort - staying

My name's Tamer. I like going to Taba. It's my favorite ❶ I like swimming in the ❷ Sea. Tourists like ❸ in hotels. They can ❹ in the sea, too.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sharm El-Sheikh is the best place to visit in Egypt. I was so happy when I traveled with my uncle. He is a tour guide. He told me that Sharm El-Sheikh is good for eco-tourism because there are valleys, mountains, deserts and seas, so tourists can do different activities.

Tourists can enjoy hiking, camping and diving. Tourists can find everything in Sharm El-Sheikh for a great holiday.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is in

☐ a Libya

☐ b Jordan

☐ c Egypt

☐ d Oman

2. Eco means related to

☐ a biology

☐ b nature

☐ c museum

☐ d environment

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. What activities can tourists do in Sharm El-Sheikh?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. can - in - Tourists - the Red - dive - Sea.

2. find - You - can - wildlife - fantastic - Taba - in.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Noha was (watch) TV at 8 yesterday. (2024)

2. While I (dive) in the Red Sea, I saw beautiful fish.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how is tourism important to Egypt

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

enjoy the environment - local people

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Myself and others

Jobs we do

الوظائف التي نعمل بها



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ و يقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الوظائف المختلفة في مصر القديمة.
2. Understand ecosystems.
- يفهم الطالب عن النظم البيئية.
3. Practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الروتين (العادات والممارسات المعتادة).
4. Practice using *must* to talk about obligation.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (*must*) (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الالتزام.
5. Understand and discuss a traditional tale.
- يفهم الطالب و يناقش إحدى القصص القديمة.
6. Learn to say words with diphthongs.
- يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول الكلمات التي بها ادغام (دمج نطق حرفين متحركين متلاصقين)
7. Understand pie charts.
- يفهم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية.
8. Write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- يكتب الطالب عن مميزات و ميوب الوظائف المختلفة.
9. Make a poster about teamwork.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق يصور عن العمل الجماعي.

Lesson 1

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



تماثيل



حبوب



الكتابة الهيروغليفية



كاتب



مجوهرات



سجلات

female ruler
pharaohs



فلاحين



لوحات

الملكة الحاكمة
الفراعنة



حرفيين

medicine
income



بذور الكتان

دواء
دخل مالي / إيرادات

Important jobs

وظائف هامة

doctor
fisherman
baker

طبيب
صياد
خباز

trader
craftspeople

تاجر
حرفيين

Other words

كلمات أخرى

signs
crops
sandals
rows
columns
as well

رموز / علامات
محاصيل
صنادل
صفوف
اعمدة
أيضاً

wheat
Ancient Egypt
basket
queen
temple
medical school

قمح
مصر القديمة
سلة
ملكة
معبد
مدرسة أو كلية لتعليم الطب



Jobs we do

ADJECTIVES

successful

ناجح

colorful

زاهى كثير الألوان

expensive

غالى الثمن

ancient

قديم

medical

طبي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

plant

يزرع

planted

cook

يطهى

cooked

bake

يخبز

baked

consist of

يتكون من

consisted of

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

become

يصبح

became

grow

ينمو/يزرع

grew

weave

ينسج

wove

spend

يقضى (وقت)

spent

take care

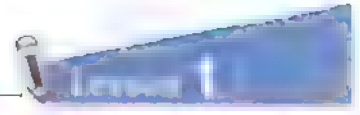
يعتنى بـ

took care

Study the following

- 1 People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. - كان يعمل الناس في مصر القديمة بجد.
- 2 People could work as fishermen. - استطاع الناس أن يعملوا كصيادين.
- 3 Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt. - تجلب الزراعة كثيراً من الدخل لمصر.
- 4 Craftsmen made beautiful things. - صنع الحرفيون أشياء جميلة.
- 5 Craftsmen used to weave beautiful clothes. - اعتاد الحرفيون على نسج ملابس جميلة.
- 6 Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs. - قضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة في تعلم الهيروغليفية.
- 7 The Ancient Egyptians were very successful. - كان القدماء المصريون ناجحون جداً.
- 8 Hatshepsut was a famous female ruler of Egypt. - كانت الملكة حتشبسوت حاكمة مشهورة لمصر.





استمع واقرأ. ماذا لم يتمكن العديد من الناس العمل ككتبة؟

استمع واقرأ. ماذا لم يتمكن العديد من الناس العمل ككتبة؟

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

استمع إلى النص:



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard.

Everyone had a job. They could work as **farmers** (1), bakers, doctors, and traders.

But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted

grains (2), usually **crops** (3) like wheat, corn, and **fruits** (4). They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

Ancient Egyptian **artists** (5) were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and **sculptures** (6). They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as **scribes** (7).

Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could **weave** (8) baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become **pharaohs** (9). One famous **queen** (10) in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

- ١- صيادون
- ٢- محاصيل
- ٣- حيوب
- ٤- يدور الكتان
- ٥- حرفيين
- ٦- تماثيل
- ٧- كتبة
- ٨- يسج
- ٩- فراعين (ملوك)
- ١٠- ملكة



استمع مرة أخرى واكتب (صح) أم (خطأ)

استمع مرة أخرى واكتب (صح) أم (خطأ)

True False

1 Everyone in Ancient Egypt could become a scribe.

F

2 Craftspeople made beautiful things.

3 Women worked at home only.

4 Farmers could plant fruit, vegetables, and grains.

5 There were very few jobs in Ancient Egypt.





Jobs we do



استمع وردد ثم صل الكلمة بتعريفها :

Doctor - Craftsman - Trader - Scribe - Hieroglyphs

- 1- People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.
- 2- People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.
- 3- If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.
- 4- A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.
- 5- Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.



the ones in Exercise 3

انظر إلى هذه الوظائف. اختر واحدة واكتب (٢-٣) جمل وصفية مثل التمرين رقم (٣).

fisherman - farmer - teacher

Farmers fields and planted many crops.

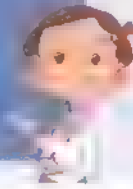
هل تعلم؟ know?

More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming.
Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt

أكثر من ٢٥% من المصريين يعملون في الزراعة ، فالزراعة تجلب دخلاً كبيراً لمصر.



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمِعْ وَاخْتَرِ الإِجَابَةَ الصَّحِيحَةَ:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. _____ worked at home in Ancient Egypt.

- ☐ a Queens ☐ b Women ☐ c Children ☐ d Men

2. Women cooked _____.

- ☐ a cakes ☐ b pizza ☐ c meals ☐ d pasta

3. Women could take care of their _____.

- ☐ a brothers ☐ b parents ☐ c fathers ☐ d children

4. Women could sell baskets at _____.

- ☐ a school ☐ b home ☐ c the market ☐ d the hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A _____ helps sick people. (2024)

- ☐ a teacher ☐ b doctor ☐ c scribe ☐ d trader

2. A / An _____ knew how to read and write well. (2024)

- ☐ a scribe ☐ b cleaner ☐ c trader ☐ d farmer

3. I saw a _____ who caught a big and beautiful fish

- ☐ a fisherman ☐ b chef ☐ c carpenter ☐ d baker

4. _____ could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt. (2024)

- ☐ a Traders ☐ b Scribes ☐ c Farmers ☐ d Doctors

5. I want to be a _____. I like making beautiful pots from clay. (2024)

- ☐ a trader ☐ b scribe ☐ c fisherman ☐ d craftsman

6. _____ are crops like wheat, corn and flax.

- ☐ a Painting ☐ b Baskets ☐ c Records ☐ d Grains

7. _____ had to go to medical schools.

- ☐ a Doctors ☐ b Scribes ☐ c Craftsmen ☐ d Farmers

8. Craftsmen _____ beautiful paintings and jewelry.

- ☐ a planted ☐ b made ☐ c cooked ☐ d played

9. _____ was a system of writing. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

- ☐ a Hieroglyphs ☐ b Paintings ☐ c Pots ☐ d Medicine



Jobs we do

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

work - successful - knew - grew - hard

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Everyone **1** that work was important for life. They worked very **2** They could **3** as fishermen, bakers, doctors and traders. The Ancient Egyptians were very **4**

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. could - Women - baskets - weave.
2. writing - Egyptian - The - easy - wasn't.
3. in - worked - Ancient - Pharaoh - Egypt - hard.
4. was - famous - Isis - a - female - ruler.
5. brings - to - the Nile - income - a lot of - Egypt.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. they worked as fishermen
2. why does Mustafa like clay

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases:

many jobs - very hard



Lesson Part 1

Science Ecosystems

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



crab

كابوريا



rocks

صخور



sunlight

ضوء الشمس



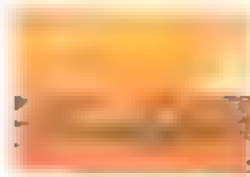
fish

سمك



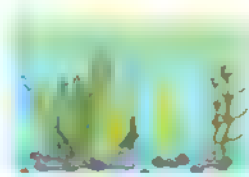
insect

حشرة



sand

رمل



seaweed

أعشاب بحرية / طحالب



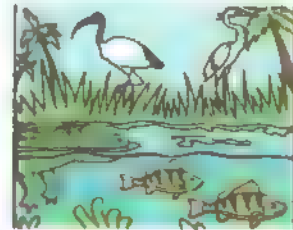
rainforest

غابة مطيرة



Marine ecosystem

النظام البيئي البحري



Freshwater ecosystem

النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة

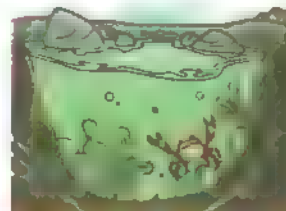
Ecosystems

النظم
البيئية



Desert ecosystem

النظام البيئي الصحراوي



Rockpool ecosystem

النظام البيئي للبحيرات الصخرية

rockpool
living

بحيرة صخرية
حي

non-living

غير حي



Other words

كلمات أخرى

freshwater
connectionماء عذب
صلة / علاقةsource
areasمصدر
مناطق

ADJECTIVES

صفات

natural
connectedطبيعي
متصل

different

مختلف

Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضي

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضي

connect

يتصل

connected

make

يصنع

made

survive

يبقى حيًا

survived

give

يعطي

gave

work

يعمل

worked

living

حي

something that is alive

non-living

غير حي

something that isn't alive

ecosystem

نظام بيئي

all the animals, plants, rocks, etc.. in a place

rockpool

بحيرة صخرية

a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

Study the following

- 1 The River Nile is the most important source of freshwater in Egypt.
- نهر النيل هو المصدر الأكثر أهمية للماء العذب في مصر.
- 2 A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.
- كثير من النباتات والحيوانات تعيش في النهر أو بجواره.
- 3 Everything in the natural world is connected.
- كل شيء في عالم الطبيعة مرتبط ببعضه البعض.
- 4 There are lots of different plants and animals, like fish, crabs and seaweed.
- الكائنات الحية في البحيرات الصخرية هي الأسماك والكابوريا والأعشاب البحرية.
- 5 There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.
- يوجد العديد من أنواع النظم البيئية على كوكب الأرض.
- 6 The non-living things are rocks, water, sand and sunlight.
- الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس.
- 7 This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem.
- العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية تسمى بالنظام البيئي.



فكر وقل :

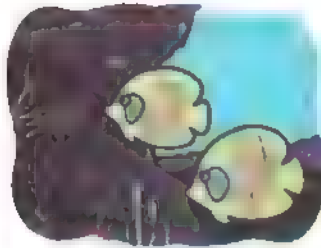
Think about the River Nile. It is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river. Name as many plants and animals that live in or near the river as you can.



read, and look. Are all ecosystems the

أستمع واقرأ وانظر. هل كل النظم البيئية نفس الشيء؟

استمع إلى النص:



a marine ecosystem



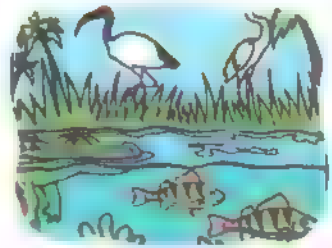
a desert ecosystem

What is an ecosystem⁽¹⁾?

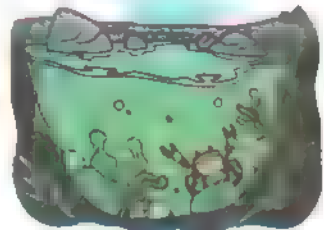
Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between **living**⁽²⁾ and **non-living**⁽³⁾ things is called an **ecosystem**.

Ecosystems can be small, like a **rockpool**⁽⁴⁾, or they can be very big, like **the Amazon rainforest**⁽⁵⁾.

The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.



a freshwater ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem

- ١- نظام بيئي
- ٢- حي
- ٣- غير حي
- ٤- بحيرة صخرية
- ٥- غابات الأمازون الاستوائية

meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بالخط العريض وصلهم بمعانيهم:

1 living

2 non-living

ecosystem

rockpool



a. something that isn't alive

b. all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place

c. a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

d. something that is alive

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Crabs and fish are things. (2024)
☐ a living ☐ b rocks ☐ c non-living ☐ d rockpool
2. A is a small ecosystem. (2024)
☐ a rockpool ☐ b river ☐ c city ☐ d village
3. Sunlight and water are things. (2024)
☐ a non-living ☐ b living ☐ c forest ☐ d thinking
4. is the connection between living and non-living things. (2024)
☐ a Rockpool ☐ b Desert ☐ c Ecosystem ☐ d Plants
5. Everything in the natural world is
☐ a connected ☐ b given ☐ c worked ☐ d eaten
6. The things are things that aren't alive.
☐ a living ☐ b non-living ☐ c rockpool ☐ d crabs
7. The River Nile is the most important source of water in Egypt.
☐ a salt ☐ b sand ☐ c bad ☐ d fresh
8. is a small area of water with rocks, crabs and seaweed.
☐ a Rockpool ☐ b Ecosystem ☐ c Desert ☐ d Forest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

natural - Earth - ecosystem - living - rocks

Yesterday, I had a science lesson at school. It was about the ❶ I learnt that everything in the ❷ world is connected. There's a connection between ❸ and non-living things. There are lots of different ecosystems on ❹

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living things and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water and sunlight.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about

☐ a rivers☐ b farming☒ c ecosystem☐ d sunlight

2. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and

☒ a seaweed☐ b sunlight☐ c water☐ d sand**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What is ecosystem?

4. What are the non-living things?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. What - is - ecosystem - an?2. can - a rockpool - Ecosystems - be - like - small.3. are - lots of - T - different - ecosystems - Earth - on.4. is - the - T - source - important - fresh water - of.**5 Punctuate the following:**

(ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي)

1. all things work together

2. can you think of three things

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- small area of water - living things

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Lesson 2

Part 2

Language focus



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات،

Other words

boss	رئيس عمال	melon	شمام
zoo keeper	حارس حديقة الحيوان	midday	وسط النهار
sharp knife	سكين حاد	customer	زبون
bath	حمام	manager	مدير
make sure	يتأكد	menu	قائمة طعام

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
ask يسأل	asked	drive يقود	drove
check يفحص / يتأكد	checked	cut يقطع	cut
prepare يُعدّ / يجهز	prepared	catch يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught
cook يطهو	cooked		

1- The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع الآتي:

I / You / We / They فعل في المصدر (inf.) + اسم جمع

- I eat fruit every day.

ويضاف للفعل s, es, ies مع الضمائر She, It, He.

He / She / It اسم مفرد + فعل في المصدر (inf.) + s, es, ies

- He eats fruit.

- She catches a bus.

- He flies a plane



Jobs we do

في حالة النفي

I / We / You / They / اسم الجمع + don't + inf.

نستخدم:

- They **don't** like fish.

He / She / It / اسم المفرد + doesn't + inf.

نستخدم:

- She **doesn't** play tennis.

⊙ لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم (never) في النفي و تأتي قبل الفعل الاساسي و يبقى الفعل كما هو:

- She **never** eats fish.

في حالة الإستفهام

Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + inf... ?

نستخدم:

- **Do** you watch TV?

- Yes, I do. ⊙ إجابة مثبتة. - No, I don't. ⊙ إجابة منفية.

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf... ?

نستخدم:

- **Does** he live in Cairo?

- Yes, he does. ⊙ إجابة مثبتة. - No, he doesn't. ⊙ إجابة منفية.

⊙ تأتي الكلمات التالية مع زمن المضارع البسيط:

sometimes often usually always every day / week...

⊙ ولها موضعان:

١- قبل الفعل العادي

- I **sometimes** visit my friend.

٢- بعد فعل (to be) في تصريفاته التالية are/is/am

- They **are** usually late for work.

⊙ الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف (ساكن) نحذف الـ (y) ونضع (ies).

- He **studies** hard.

⊙ ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضع (s) فقط ولا نحذف الـ (y).

- He **plays** computer games.

⊙ الفعل المنتهي بالحروف الآتية (o - x - ch - sh - ss) نضيف للفعل (es).

- He **washes** his hands.



Grammar

مصدر الفعل + must

● نستخدم **must + inf.** للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما.

- I **must buy** some oranges.

مصدر الفعل + mustn't

● ونستخدم **mustn't (must not) + inf.** للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.

- We **mustn't talk** in the library.

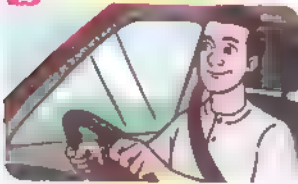
● لاحظ لا يأتي **must / mustn't** بعد

I must not talk when the teacher is in the class.

أنظر وأقرأ واكتب ، استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال الآتية :

ask - check - cook - cut - drive - open

1



1- I **drive** to work at 10 am.

2



2 - I the menu and make sure we have the right food.

3



3 - My boss me to prepare the vegetables.

4



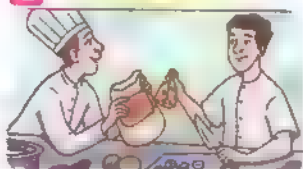
4- I the vegetables with a sharp knife.

5



5 - At midday, the manager the restaurant.

6



6 -We lots of delicious food for our customers.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال في زمن المضارع البسيط.

1. Mrs Soha (work) in a school.
2. My sister (study) at Mansoura University.
3. We (play) computer games at the weekend.
4. I (eat) yogurt and melon for breakfast.
5. Mr Said (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

3 Read. What is Walid's job

اقرأ. ما وظيفة وليد؟

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!

Answer: zoo keeper



4 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't

أكمل الجمل بـ must أو mustn't.

1. I do my English homework. ✓
2. You walk on the grass. ✗
3. You look after the environment. ✓
4. Nadim tidy up the kitchen. ✓
5. Nahla wake her sick brother up. ✗
6. You forget to take a hat today. ✗

Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأحتر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Walid is a
☐ a boss ☐ b zoo keeper ☐ c craftsman ☐ d gardener
2. Walid looks after
☐ a hippos ☐ b lions ☐ c giraffes ☐ d monkeys
3. Walid must give hippos a
☐ a food ☐ b bath ☐ c place ☐ d melon
4. Walid must clean their
☐ a bodies ☐ b hands ☐ c teeth ☐ d legs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We must look the environment.
☐ a for ☐ b at ☐ c after ☐ d in
2. My boss me to prepare the vegetables.
☐ a cut ☐ b checked ☐ c asked ☐ d opened
3. We use a to cut vegetables.
☐ a spoon ☐ b cage ☐ c glass ☐ d knife
4. Amr looks after elephants. He is a
☐ a doctor ☐ b zoo keeper ☐ c teacher ☐ d dentist

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He (don't) like karate. (2024)
2. We ... (mustn't) tidy up our house. (2024)
3. We often (visiting) our uncle on Fridays. (2024)



Jobs we do

4. The farmer (**grow**) mangoes. (2024)
5. What (**do**) he played at the club every day? (2024)
6. Salma (**always**) drinks milk. She doesn't like it. (2024)
7. He (**cut**) the vegetables with a sharp knife. (2024)
8. I (**mustn't**) do my homework. (2024)
9. They (**come sometimes**) to school late.
10. Hisham (**playing**) computer games every day.
11. They (**mustn't to**) play in the street.
12. Do you (**preparing**) the vegetables?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. clean - must - teeth - Magda - her.
.....
2. must - tidy - up - kitchen - the - tidy.
.....
3. drive - I - work - 10 am - to - at.
.....
4. mustn't - you - grass - walk - on - the. (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does Abdullah do
.....
2. mustafa must look after the environment
.....

Lesson

The Ant and the Grasshopper

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



beez

يطن (صوت النحلة)



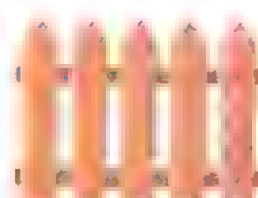
ant

نملة



grasshopper

جرادة



fence

سور

Other words

كلمات أخرى



hop away

يقفز بعيداً

relaxing

مسترخي

rest against

يستريح مستنداً على

boring

ممل (غير ممتع)

ADJECTIVES

كلمات



lazy

كسول

strange

غريب

cold

بارد

hungry

جوعان

surprised

متدهش

lovely

رائع

full of

ممتلئ بـ

Other words

كلمات أخرى



butterfly

فراشة

sound

صوت

fall

فصل الخريف

conversation

محادثة

spring

فصل الربيع

inside

بالداخل

winter

فصل الشتاء

garden

حديقة

suddenly

فجأة

field

حقل

soon

قريباً

have fun

يستمتع بوقته

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

carry on يواصل / يستمر

carried on

buzz (صوت النحلة) يطن

buzzed

harvest يحصد

harvested

reply يرد

replied

ignore يتجاهل

ignored

prepare يجهز

prepared

hop away يقفز بعيداً

hopped away

knock on يطرق الباب

knocked on

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

hear يسمع

heard

find out يكتشف

found out

understand يفهم

understood

shine تشرق الشمس

shone

spend يقضى وقت

spent

Language Functions

وظائف اللغة

What + (am, is, are) + فاعل + v + ing?

- What **are** the butterflies **doing**?
- The butterflies **are flying** in the sun.

1
للسؤال
عن أحداث
تقع الآن
وللاجابة :

Why don't you + inf مصدر الفعل ؟

- Why **don't** you **visit** Luxor with me?
- Sure, I think it'll be fun.
- Thank you, but I need to do my homework.

2
للتعبير عن
الاقتراح
للاجابة بالموافقة :
وللاجابة بالاعتذار :

Study the following

- 1 The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers.
- الشمس ساطعة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور.
- 2 It's a lovely day.
- إنه يوم جميل.
- 3 The bees are buzzing.
النحل يصدر صوت الطنين.
- 4 The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.
- يقضى ذكر الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخياً.
- 5 Why don't you stop working?
لم لا تتوقف عن العمل؟
- 6 I need to carry on my work.
أريد أن أستمّر في عملي.
- 7 But working is so boring.
ولكن العمل ممل جداً.
- 8 We must think about the future.
علينا أن نفكر في المستقبل.
- 9 The ant doesn't stop working.
- النملة لا تتوقف عن العمل.
- 10 It is very important to work hard.
- من المهم أن تعمل بجد.

استمع واقرأ. ماذا يريد ذكر الجراد أن يفعل؟

استمع إلى النص.



1



It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields are ⁽¹⁾ and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and ⁽²⁾ to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

2



The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work.

Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange ⁽³⁾. He wants

to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.

١- الحقول
٢- حشرات
٣- صوت



3



"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies⁽⁴⁾ the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper.

"Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.

4



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do."

٤- نرد
٥- يقفر بعيدا

We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away⁽⁵⁾.

5

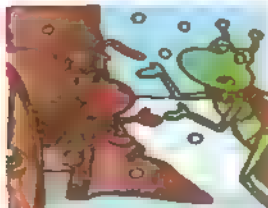


Soon, it is fall⁽⁶⁾. The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested⁽⁷⁾ all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

٦- فصل الحريف
٧- حصد
٨- فحاة
٩- يطرق الباب

Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any.

6



Suddenly⁽⁸⁾, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on⁽⁹⁾ the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

2

Read and circle:

أقرأ وضع دائرة:

1. The grasshopper is surprised when he sees the ant because ...

- ☐ a The ant doesn't like playing football.
- ☐ b The ant is ignoring him.
- ☐ c The ant is working hard to prepare for winter.
- ☐ d The ant prefers to play with other insects.

2. The Ant and the Grasshopper teaches us ...

- ☐ that ants are boring insects.
- ☐ that it's important to work to prepare for the future.
- ☐ that some insects work harder than others.
- ☐ that it's important to have fun every day.

Discuss these questions with a partner:

ناقش الأسئلة مع زميل.

1. What did the ant do during the spring?
2. What did the grasshopper do during the spring?
3. Was the ant prepared for the winter?
4. Was the grasshopper prepared for the winter?
5. What do you think the grasshopper will do next spring?

Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الأصوات المدمجة (المركبة) **Diphthongs** حيث تتكون من نطق حرفين متحركين جاءا في كلمة وليس بينهما فاصل وتنتج عنها صوت جديد.
- فمثلاً كلمة (town) لا يفصل بين الحرفين المتحركين بحرف ساكن فيكونا مقطعاً صوتياً واحداً.

/aʊ /ow - ou

down	أسفل
town	مدينة
brown	بنى
loud	عالي الصوت
mouse	فأر

/aɪ /y - igh

why	لماذا
light	ضوء
buy	يشترى
eye	عين
try	يجرب

/ɔɪ /oy - oi

boy	ولد
enjoy	يستمتع بـ
point	يشير
toy	لعبة
noise	ضوضاء

- لاحظ في الجزء السابق كل صوت والكلمات والحروف التي تمثله.



Jobs we do

1

استمع وردد:

/ aʊ /

down

town

/ aɪ /

why

light

/ ɔɪ /

boy

enjoy

2

قل. اكتب الكلمات حسب المجموعة الصحيحة وفقاً للتمرين رقم (١).

1- brown	2- buy	3- eye
4- loud	5- mouse	6- noise
7- point	8- toy	9- try

aʊ

br n

aɪ

tr

ɔɪ

t



The suffix

(اللاحقة)

- اللاحقة عبارة عن حرف أو مجموعة أحرف تضاف إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات فتغير معناها.
- وندرس هنا اللاحقة (ist) التي تعني أن شخص ما يقوم بوظيفة معينة ونستخدمها في الكلمات التي تدل على الوظائف. فمثلاً كلمة (journalist) يقصد بها جريدة وبعد إضافة (ist) إليها تتغير إلى كلمة (journalist) وتعني (صحفي).

(ist) words



biologist

عالم أحياء



journalist

صحفي



receptionist

موظف استقبال



pianist

عازف بيانو



scientist

عالم



dentist

طبيب أسنان



انتظر واكتب:

1



She's a biolog ---

2



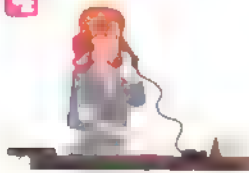
She's a pian ---

3



She's a journal ---

4



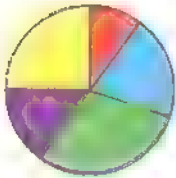
He's a reception ---

5



He's a scient ---

CLIL MATH



Pie charts الرسوم البيانية الدائرية

This is a pie chart

◀ الرسم البياني الدائري هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات:

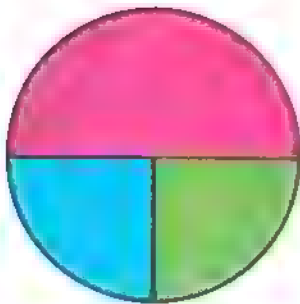
◀ حيث نقسم الدائرة الى أجزاء حيث يمثل كل جزء معلومة ما فلو فرضنا اننا نريد تمثيل الاتي

شخص يقضى ٨ ساعات في عمل اشياء مختلفة

٤ ساعات للمذاكرة

٢ ساعة للرياضة

٢ ساعة للهواية



◀ يكون تمثيلها برسم بياني دائري كالتالي:



الهواية



الرياضة



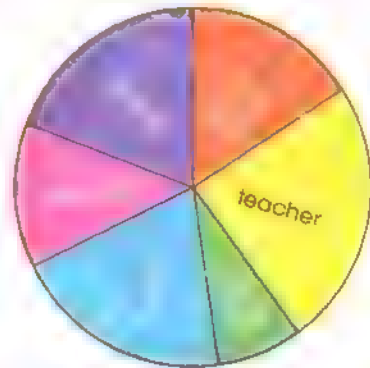
المذاكرة

4

the most popular job?

الرسم البياني الدائري وسيلة لعرض المعلومات. أنظر ما هي الوظيفة الأكثر شيوعاً؟

police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19



5

صل الجداول بالرسم البياني الدائري:

- انظر إلى الأرقام التي تمثل الرسم البياني الدائري ومن خلالها ستعرف ما تمثله كل دائرة كما بالمثال .

1- [indoors or outdoors?]

indoors or outdoors?

indoors or outdoors?

indoors	7
outdoors	3

2- [at work?]

at work?

at work?

yes	2
no	8

3- [animals?]

animals?

animals?

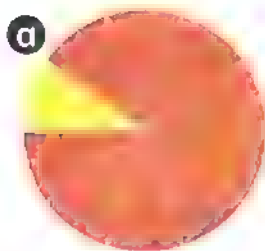
yes	1
no	9

4- [office?]

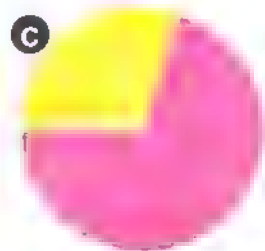
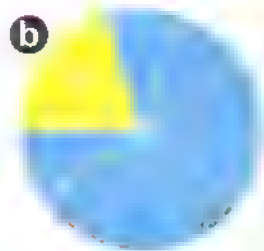
office?

office?

yes	5
no	5



3



Activities



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الصفحة



- Tamer's house has a big
☐ a garden ☐ b door ☐ c tree ☐ d street
- There's a around Tamer's garden.
☐ a door ☐ b fence ☐ c wall ☐ d lake
- Tamer waters the every day.
☐ a flowers ☐ b plants ☐ c trees ☐ d grass
- Tamer plants seeds in the garden.
☐ a fruit ☐ b lentil ☐ c vegetable ☐ d bean

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I study plants. I am a
☐ a dentist ☐ b vet ☐ c biologist ☐ d receptionist
(2024)
- The works in hotels.
☐ a doctor ☐ b vet ☐ c teacher ☐ d receptionist
(2024)
- The are buzzing all the day.
☐ a dogs ☐ b cats ☐ c bees ☐ d foxes
(الإسكندرية - إدارة المصيرة (2020))
- I have a toothache. I am going to the
☐ a journalist ☐ b pianist ☐ c receptionist ☐ d dentist
- I don't have time to play. I want to on with my work.
☐ a cry ☐ b carry ☐ c put ☐ d play
- on the door before you enter a room.
☐ a Knock ☐ b Hop ☐ c Relax ☐ d Work

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

important - lazy - spring - winter - fun

Ants work hard. They are not ☐ They stop working in ☐ because it's cold. It's fine to have ☐ , but it is ☐ to work hard, too.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. day - a - It's - lovely.

2. bees - are - they - buzzing.

(2024)

3. want - to - I - dentist - be - a.

(2024)

4. think - must - we - the - future - about.

5. flying - the - butterflies - are - the - in - sky.

6. don't - work - and - I'm - I - hungry - now.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The sun is **(shine)**.

2. The gardens are full **(at)** flowers.

3. Why **(aren't)** you stop working?

4. We must **(thinking)** about the future.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what did amr do in the spring?

2. my friend Salma wants to be a doctor

Lessons 4&5

Writing & Project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



vet
طبيب بيطري



computer programmer
مبرمج كمبيوتر



operation
عملية جراحية

Other words



aim	هدف	solutions	حلول
solve problems	يحل مشاكل	teammates	زملاء الفريق
distance	مسافة	tropical	استوائي
experiment	تجربة في المعمل	concert	حفلة موسيقى
reports	تقارير	indoors	في الداخل (داخل المبنى)
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	outdoors	في الخارج (خارج المبنى)
I don't mind	لا أمانع	office job	وظيفة داخل مكتب
make friends	يكون صداقات	early	مبكراً
scare	يخيف		

ADJECTIVES



clean	نظيف	injured	مصاب مجروح
dirty	متسخ	keen on	حريص على متحمس لـ



Jobs we do

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
solve يحل مشكلة	solved	bring يحضر	brought
mind يمانع	minded	write يكتب	wrote
prefer يفضل	preferred	get sick يمرض	got sick
work out يستريح / يجد حل	worked out	win يفوز	won

Language Functions

Would you prefer / like to + inf. مصدر الفعل؟

السؤال
عن التفضيل

السؤال عن تفضيل فعل / شئ نقول.

- Would you like / prefer to work as a vet?

هل تفضل العمل كطبيب بيطري؟

- Yes, I'd like / prefer to. - I can work with animals. اجابة مثبتة كاملة ، وللاجابة بالاثبات ،
- No, I'd prefer not to. - I can't work with animals. اجابة مثبتة كاملة ، والاجابة بالنفي ،



Study the following

- I work with animals and I love my job. - أعمل في مجال الحيوانات، وأحب عملي.
- I help to make animals better. - أساعد في جعل الحيوانات أفضل.
- What's the worst part of the job? - ما هو اسوأ شئ في العمل؟
- I loved playing computer games. - كنت أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- I like traveling long distances. - أحب السفر الى مسافات بعيدة.
- I wanted an office job. - أردت وظيفة في مكتب.
- I'm good at making new friends. - انى جيد فى تكوين صداقات جديدة.

- 8 I work in a team for the school concert. - أعمل في فريق للحفل الموسيقي المدرسي.
9 You can't win a football match by yourself. - لا تستطيع الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك.

1 Read and answer. أقرأ، ما هي وظائف رنا وشريف؟

استمع إلى النص.



My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured⁽¹⁾, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring⁽²⁾ their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation⁽³⁾, the room has to be very, very clean.



On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check⁽⁴⁾ on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind⁽⁵⁾! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

- ١- مصاب
٢- يحضر
٣- عملية جراحية
٤- يفحص
٥- يمانع

Rana is a doctor / (vet).

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare⁽¹⁾ me! I'm not keen on⁽²⁾ being outside, so I wanted an office job⁽³⁾.



When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems⁽⁴⁾. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree⁽⁵⁾, but we work out the best solutions⁽⁶⁾.

- ١- يخيف
٢- متحمس
٣- وظيفة مكتبية
٤- حل المشاكل
٥- يتفق
٦- حلول

Sherif is a computer programmer / a computer programmer / vet.

2 Read again and answer

أقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب.

1. What does Rana like about working with animals?
2. Why did Sherif not want to work with animals?
3. Would you prefer to have Rana's job or Sherif's job? Why?





Jobs we do



اقرأ الأفكار الموجودة بالجدول وأكتب عن وظيفة ترغب فيها وأخرى لا ترغب فيها. اعطى الأسباب. أكتب من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة :

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about ...

- being indoors or outdoors
- traveling long distances
- getting up very early
- writing reports
- meeting / talking to new people

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

- solving problems
- helping sick people / animals
- making new friends
- reading lots of information
- working in a team

When I'm older, I want to be a ... because I think this is a good job for me because I like I'm good at ... and I enjoy

I don't want to be a ... because I'm not good at Also, I don't really enjoy

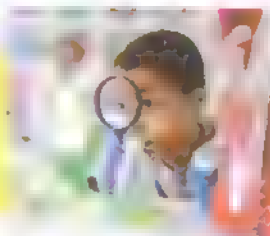


Do you like it?

اقرأ. هل يمكنك ان تفكر في أوقات أخرى عندما كنت تعمل فيها في فريق؟ هل تحب الأمر؟

Teamwork

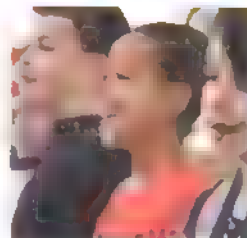
I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.



I work in a team for the school

(1)

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something

(2) For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your (3) to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

Group Work

١- حفلة موسيقية

٢- مغا

٣- رملاء الفريق

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I love _____ new friends.

- ☐ a doing ☐ b making ☐ c working ☐ d planting

2. You can't _____ a match by yourself.

- ☐ a bring ☐ b write ☐ c win ☐ d eat

3. A _____ helps to make animals better.

- ☐ a vet ☐ b football player
☐ c computer programmer ☐ d dentist

4. The operation room must be _____.

- ☐ a dirty ☐ b the worst ☐ c clean ☐ d bad

5. He is clever. He can _____ out the solution.

- ☐ a help ☐ b work ☐ c agree ☐ d enjoy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

check - scare - animals - better - bring

My sister is a vet. She works with sick ☐ 1 . People ☐ 2 their animals to her. She helps to make animals ☐ 3 . She goes to people's houses or farms to ☐ 4 on the animals.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم اجب الأسئلة:

I'm Malek. When I grow up, I don't want to work with animals because they **scare** me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I want an office job. I love playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So when I grow up, I want to be a computer programmer. So, in my job, I will do both. I also enjoy working with other people. There will be a lot of people in my team. We won't always agree, but we will work out the best solutions.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Malek doesn't like to be _____.

- ☐ a inside ☐ b outside ☐ c in a team ☐ d with people



Jobs we do

2. The underlined word "scare" means

a help

b play

c run

d make afraid

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why doesn't Malek want to work with animals?

4. What does Malek want to be when he grows up?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. want - an - job - I - office.

2. make - animals - _ - help - to - better.

3. enjoy - _ - solving - really - problems.

4. wants - be - _____ - to - a - programmer - computer.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hello, I m Mohamed.

2. where does Ali have lunch

6 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجااب آخر الوجدد

Guiding phrases

office job - solving problems

Review



Jobs in Ancient Egypt



sculptures
تماثيل



grains
حبوب



hieroglyphs
اللغة الهيروغليفية



scribe
كاتب (عند الفراعنة)



jewelry
مجوهرات



farmers
فلاحين



paintings
لوحات



craftsmen
حرفيين



records
سجلات



flax
بذور الكتان

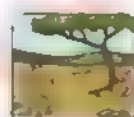
Ecosystems



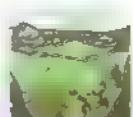
Marine ecosystem
النظام البيئي البحري



Freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة



Desert ecosystem
النظام البيئي الصحراوي



Rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئي
لبركة مياه صخرية



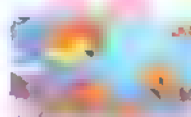
crab
كابوريا



rocks
صخور



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



fish
سمك



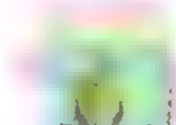
rainforest
غابة مطيرة



insect
حشرة



sand
رمل



seaweed
اعشاب بحرية / طحالب





Conjugation of verbs

تحويل الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

plant يزرع

planted

prepare يجهز

prepared

carry on يستمر في

carried on

harvest يحصد

harvested

knock on يطرق (باب)

knocked on

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

become يصبح

became

weave ينسج

wove

spend يقضي (وقت)

spent

leave يغادر يترك

left

understand يفهم

understood

shine تشرق الشمس

shone

Grammar

قواعد لغوية

1-The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage استخدام

● يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Form صيغة

● يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل.

فعل في المصدر (inf.) + اسم جمع → I / You / We / They

- I **eat** fruit.

● يضاف للفعل (s / es / ies) مع الضمائر (He / She / It).

فعل في المصدر (inf.) + s / es / ies → اسم مفرد / He / She / It

- He **eats** fruit.- She **catches** a bus.- He **flies** a plane

2- must & mustn't

● نستخدم **must + inf.** للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء ما. - I **must** some oranges.● ونستخدم **mustn't + inf.** (must not) للتعبير عن المنع أو النهي.- We **mustn't** talk in the library.



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Answers to texts

Lesson 1

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

- 1 There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers grew grains. They worked in fields very hard. Few people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write. Craftsmen made beautiful things. People could work as fishermen.

Lesson 2

Rockpool ecosystem

- 2 The rockpool is a small area of water with rocks. It's different from other ecosystems. It has living things in it. There are crabs, fish and seaweed. They are amazing things.

Lessons 4&5

Computer programmer

- 3 My name is Hisham. I work as a computer programmer. I don't like being outside. I want an office job. I enjoy solving problems and working with other people. I really like my job.

Activity - Unit 5

A job you like

- 4 I want to be a vet. I like helping sick animals. I play with all kinds of animals. I feel happy when I help any animal. It's a really good job.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالازهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Magdy is a . (dentist - zoo keeper - farmer)
2. Magdy looks after . (monkeys - lions - hippos)
3. is important for animals. (Water - Juice - Oil)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

craftsman - doing - want - homework

A : What are you ?

B : I'm doing my

A : What do you to be in the future?

B : I want to be a

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women helped their husbands on farms. They grew a lot of crops.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Ancient Egyptian women work?
2. What did Ancient Egyptian women cook?

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. Egyptian women took care of their (work - children - teams)
4. Women helped their (husbands - parents - sisters)

5. Ancient Egyptian women and their husbands grew many

(schools - crops - crabs)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The boys are football.

a flying

b swimming

c playing

2. We mustn't in the library.

a talks

b talk

c talked

3. Corn and flax are

a fruits

b vegetables

c grains

4. We have a big around our garden.

a room

b fence

c fan

5. My boss me to prepare the vegetables.

a ask

b asks

c asking

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. doing - are - What - you?

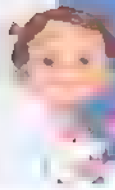
2. works - animals - to - with.

3. need to - I - my - carry on - work.

4. teammates - you - work - your - must - with.

5. food - We - lots of - delicious - prepare.





Activities

Unit 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

انص الأستماع الجواب



- _____ was very important in Ancient Egypt.
☐ a Fishing ☐ b Farming ☐ c Writing ☐ d Playing
- Farmers worked in their _____.
☐ a homes ☐ b schools ☐ c fields ☐ d temples
- The fields were _____ farmers' homes.
☐ a far from ☐ b near ☐ c behind ☐ d in front of
- Farmers grew many crops like _____.
☐ a grapes ☐ b jewelry ☐ c grains ☐ d cotton

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Wheat, corn and flax are called _____.
☐ a vegetables ☐ b grains ☐ c fruits ☐ d places
- Ancient Egyptian _____ made beautiful paintings. (2024)
☐ a nurses ☐ b doctors ☐ c kings ☐ d craftsmen
- I'm a vet. I help _____ animals.
☐ a well ☐ b sick ☐ c happy ☐ d big
- Scribes spent many years to learn _____. (2024)
☐ a science ☐ b hieroglyphs ☐ c art ☐ d English

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

working - playing - office - best - solving

My brother Samy is a computer programmer. He works in an ❶ _____. He works hard. He can work out the ❷ _____ solutions. He enjoys ❸ _____ with other people and ❹ _____ problems.

Myself and others

What's the weather like?

ما هي حالة الطقس ؟



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about the weather.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثًا ويكتب عن الطقس.

2. Read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.

3. Understand a text about natural resources.

- يفهم الطالب نص عن الموارد الطبيعية.

4. Learn to distinguish the / / and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.

- يتعلم الطالب التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف غير المنطوقة في الكلمات.

5. Write an account of extreme weather.

- يكتب الطالب وصفًا عن الطقس القاسي.

6. Research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.

- يجري الطالب بحثًا ويصنع منشورًا حول ما يجب القيام به في الطقس القاسي.

Lesson

The weather



Key vocabulary

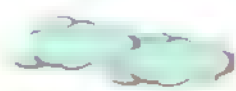
استمع إلى المفردات



سحابة



مليد بالغيوم



مطر

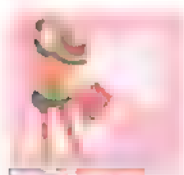


ممطر



wind

رياح



windy

عاصف (شديد الرياح)

The weather
الطقس



الشمس



sunny

مشمس



snow

جليد



ice

ثلج



rainbow

قوس قزح



storm

عاصفة

Other words



presenter

مقدم برنامج

weatherwoman

خبيرة الأرصاد الجوية

news

أخبار

normal

طبيعي

shade

ظل

special climate

مناخ خاص

variety

تنوع

night

الليل

keep cool

يحافظ على برودته

warm

دافئ

per year

كل عام

around

حوالي / تقريبا

day

النهار

degree

درجة الحرارة



What's the weather like?

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
believe يؤمن	believed آمن
ask يسأل	asked سأل
call ينادي / يتصل	called نادى / اتصل
rain تمطر	rained مطر
stay يقيم / يمكث	stayed قىم / مكث

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
bring يحضر	brought أحضر
come يأتي	came أتى
fall down يسقط	fell down سقط
get up ينهض	got up أوى
hear يسمع	heard سمع
run يجرى	ran أرى



Study the following

- I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today.
- أنقل لكم اليوم أخبار الطقس في مصر.
- It's going to be rainy in Cairo.
- سيكون الجو ممطرًا في القاهرة.
- How often does it rain in Cairo?
- كم مرة تمطر في القاهرة؟
- It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh but today we have some ice.
- لم يحدث أن يكون الجو باردًا جدًا في شرم الشيخ، ولكن اليوم لدينا بعض الثلج.
- Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!
- ستواجه الأقصر عاصفة، لذا ابق في المنزل!
- We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt.
- لدينا تنوع رائع في الطقس في مصر.
- The desert has a very special climate.
- الصحراء لها مناخ ذات طبيعة خاصة للغاية.
- It was hot and sunny last weekend and I stayed at home.
- لقد كان الجو حار ومشمس نهاية الأسبوع الماضي ومكثت بالمنزل.
- The Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt.
- نهر النيل ذو أهمية كبيرة عند الجميع في مصر.
- Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.
- الإسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار في القاهرة.



Language Functions

الطقس

نستخدم:

(It's going to be + حالة الطقس + المكان)

للتنبؤ
عن حالة
الطقس

- It's **going to be** hot in Egypt.



لاحظ الفرق بين (جليد snow) و (ثلج ice) حيث نستخدم كلمة (جليد snow) لوصف الجليد المتساقط من السماء وأعلى قمم الجبال ويكون لونه أبيض أما كلمة (ثلج ice) تصف الماء المجمد ويكون شفاف.

الاستماع

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- What are they talking about?

عما يتحدثون؟

استمع إلى النص:



☐ a weather in four cities in Egypt

☐ b weather in five cities in Egypt

Weatherwoman : Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

Presenter : Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

Weatherwoman : I know, but today it's rainy.

Presenter : What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

Weatherwoman : It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

Presenter : I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

Weatherwoman : It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

Presenter : Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

Weatherwoman : Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!





What's the weather like?

2 Read. Which city is very green?

اقرأ أي مدينة تعد الأكثر خضرة.

The weather in Egypt

استمع إلى النص.



We have a nice **variety**⁽¹⁾ of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very **dry**⁽²⁾. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 **جول**⁽³⁾ in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of

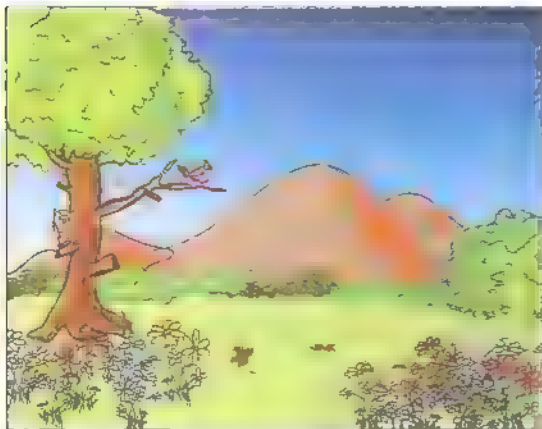
rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so **important**⁽⁴⁾ for everyone in Egypt. It brings the **water** from the south.

By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around **eight times**⁽⁵⁾ more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

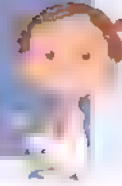


الطقس في مصر

- ١- تنوع
- ٢- جاف
- ٣- درجات الحرارة
- ٤- هاف
- ٥- ثمان مرات



Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We have a nice of weather.
☐ a degree ☐ b variety ☐ c climate ☐ d day
- The winters are in Egypt.
☐ a hotter ☐ b colder ☐ c cooler ☐ d nicer
- There's a very special in the desert.
☐ a climate ☐ b rain ☐ c cloud ☐ d night
- Alexandria has around times more rain than Cairo.
☐ a eighteen ☐ b eight ☐ c eighty ☐ d nine

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When the air is strong, it's always
☐ a rainy ☐ b windy ☐ c sunny ☐ d cloudy (2024)
- The weather is It's very hot.
☐ a windy ☐ b sunny ☐ c rainy ☐ d cloudy (2024) شمس بظلال هبوب
- It is usually cold and during winter.
☐ a rainy ☐ b hot ☐ c sunny ☐ d dry (2024) جاف
- We have summers in Egypt.
☐ a hot ☐ b rain ☐ c cold ☐ d high
- Now the temperature in Cairo is 27
☐ a degrees ☐ b grades ☐ c times ☐ d marks
- It's very at night in the desert.
☐ a cold ☐ b small ☐ c sunny ☐ d rain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - news - stay - rainy - storm

It's cold today, so I can't go to school. I'm listening to the about the weather. It's going to be in Cairo. There's a in Luxor. People in Luxor will at home. In Alexandria, it's going to be windy.





What's the weather like?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's only 25 mm of rain in

- ☐ a Cairo ☐ b London ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d England

2. The underlined word "Nile" is a

- ☐ a lake ☐ b river ☐ c sea ☐ d pond

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How much does it rain in London per year?
4. Why is the Nile important in Egypt?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. is - like - weather - the - What ? (2024) مدرسة إدارة دكرنس
2. tomorrow - will - It - be - sunny - very.
3. it - How often - rain - does - Cairo - in?
4. climate - The - special - a very - desert - has.
5. windy - Alexandria - is - sometimes - It - in.
6. of - weather - We - variety - a nice - have.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what about Alexandria
2. it's going to be rainy in Cairo

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases:

special climate - hot day

مجااب آخر الوحدة

Lesson

Part 1

The weather

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



عاصفة

إعصار



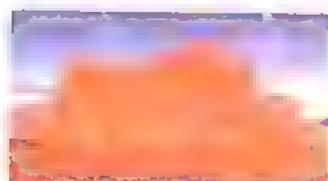
موجة المد والجزر

موجة المد والجزر



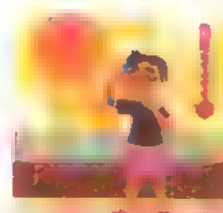
Strong winds / Storm

رياح قوية / عاصفة



sandstorm عاصفة رملية

Extreme
weather
الطقس
القاسي



heat wave موجة حارة



flood فيضان

Other words

cry

nearby

صرخة

قريب

shade

past

ظل

مازآب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

Present

مضارع

Past

ماضٍ

knock

يطرق الباب

knocked

become

يصبح

became

stay

يبقى

stayed

feel

يشعر

felt

reply

يرد

replied

know

يعرف

knew

pass

يتخطى

passed

fall

يقع

fell

lie

يرقد

lay



What's the weather like?



A heat wave:

It's when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything.



Study the following

- 1 A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high.
- الموجة الحارة تحدث عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بدرجة كبيرة.
- 2 We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.
- لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.
- 3 We came back on the shady side of the street.
- عدنا من الجانب الذي به ظل في الشارع.
- 4 The very hot summer became a heat wave.
- أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة.
- 5 Mom made lemonade to cool us down.
- أعدت الأم عصير ليمون لتنعشنا.
- 6 Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s.
- السيدة سهير هي سيدة عطوفة في السبعينات من عمرها.
- 7 We didn't know what to do.
- لم نكن نعرف ماذا نفعل.
- 8 We went to the store.
- ذهبنا إلى المتجر.



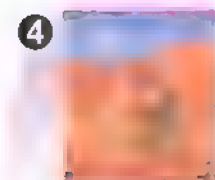
انظر واكتب :

flood - heat wave - sandstorm -

strong winds / storm - tidal wave - tornado



tornado





2 Read Talia's story. What did she and her friend do?

اقرأ قصة تاليا. ماذا فعلت هي وصديقتها؟

My heat wave⁽¹⁾ story

استمع إلى النص.



The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade⁽²⁾ and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store⁽³⁾ to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down⁽⁴⁾. We went to the store. We came back on the sidewalk⁽⁵⁾ of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry⁽⁶⁾. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 60s⁽⁷⁾ and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open⁽⁸⁾, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!'

We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works in the garden⁽⁹⁾. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

١- موجة حارة

٢- ظل

٣- متجر

٤- تذهبنا

٥- الجانب الذي به ظل

٦- صرخة

٧- في السبعينات من عمرها

٨- مفتوح قليلاً

٩- بالجوار

3 Read the story again. Put the sentences in the correct order.

اقرأ مرة أخرى. ثم ضع الجمل في الترتيب الصحيح.

- It was a very hot day.
- Talia's mom asked them to go to the store.
- Mrs Sohair was lying on the floor.
- Mr Monib and the girls helped Mrs Sohair.
- They were on the street and heard a cry.
- Talia and Lamia stayed in the shade at home.

1

هل تعلم؟

هل تعلم؟

The hottest day in Egypt was 51.1° in Aswan.

أكثر يوم حرارة في مصر كانت درجة الحرارة ٥١,١ درجة في أسوان.





Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع: الجزء الثاني



- Yesterday, the weather was too _____.
☐ a cold ☐ b hot ☐ c windy ☐ d cloudy
- People walked in the _____ of the trees.
☐ a shade ☐ b leaves ☐ c wood ☐ d branches
- My _____ told me not to go out in that day.
☐ a sister ☐ b mother ☐ c father ☐ d grandpa
- The _____ was 43 degrees.
☐ a temperature ☐ b wind ☐ c sandstorm ☐ d flood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a _____. (2020)
☐ a tornado ☐ b heat wave ☐ c flood ☐ d sandstorm
- When it is hot, we stay in the _____.
☐ a desert ☐ b shade ☐ c sun ☐ d roof
- In hot weather, we make lemonade to _____ us down.
☐ a cold ☐ b cool ☐ c hot ☐ d rain
- Yesterday, it was very _____. It was 44 degrees.
☐ a cold ☐ b hot ☐ c cool ☐ d flood
- A _____ is when the temperature goes very high.
☐ a tornado ☐ b flood ☐ c heat wave ☐ d wind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cool - shady - fell - temperature - store

One day, there was a heat wave in our city. The ❶ _____ goes very high. We went outside to buy grapes, watermelons, and lemons to make lemonade to ❷ _____ us down. It was very hot. When we went to the ❸ _____, we stood on the ❹ _____ side of the street.





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

أسبوط - أدوة معلومت (2024)

It was very hot yesterday. There was a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed at home the whole day. We tried to drink lots of water and juice. Our mom made lemonade to cool us down. Our father asked us to close all the windows. Finally, we opened the windows at night when it was cool outside. It was a hard day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was a very day.
☐ a cold ☐ b rainy ☐ c hot ☐ d windy
2. We opened the at night when it was cool outside.
☐ a windows ☐ b doors ☐ c fridges ☐ d cars

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is a heat wave?
4. Why did their mother make lemonade?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. store - We - went - to - the.
2. was - It - hot - very - a - day.
3. didn't - to - We - know - do - what.
4. kind - is - Mrs Sohair - a - lady - very.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we came back on the shady side
2. what is the heat wave

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- went to the pyramids
- shut the windows

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Study the following

- 1 We always eat shawerma on Friday. نحن دائماً نأكل شاورما يوم الجمعة.
- 2 We sometimes wake up before 7 am. نستيقظ أحياناً قبل الساعة صباحاً.
- 3 Ola is never tired after work. علا لم تكن متعبة أبداً بعد العمل.
- 4 I always speak English in my English class. - اتحدث دائماً اللغة الإنجليزية في حصة اللغة الإنجليزية.
- 5 I usually have a sandwich for lunch. أتناول عادة ساندوتش للغداء.

Grammar

القواعد

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع → (inf.)

He - She - It - اسم مفرد → (inf.)

s

es

ies

Adverbs of frequency الظروف التكرار

تُستخدَم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادةً بعد

(verb to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي:

100%	80% دائماً	70%	50%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
دائماً	عادة	غالباً	أحياناً	أبداً

- I **always** go to the club on sunny Saturdays. (قبل فعل الجملة الأساسي)

- I **often** sit on our balcony on hot nights.

أو تأتي بعد **verb to be** كما يلي:

- I'm **always** in bed at 11 pm.

- It's **never** very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh.

How often?

كم عدد المرات؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do} \rightarrow \text{I - you - we - they} \\ \text{does} \rightarrow \text{he - she - it} \end{array} \right\} + \text{inf. الفعل}$

- How often do you **play** football?
- I always **play** football.
- How often **does** he play football?
- He never **plays** football.

Verbs and nouns

أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

have a shower

يستحم

play video games

يلعب ألعاب فيديو

get up late

يستيقظ متأخرًا

make dinner

يُعد طعام العشاء

eat shawerma

يأكل الشاورما

speak English

يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية

eat strawberries

يأكل فراولة

do homework

يعمل الواجب المنزلي



Write the words in the correct order to make sentences.

اكتب الكلمات في المربع في المكان الصحيح. استمع وتحقق.

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

never - often - sometimes - usually - always

100 %

80 %

70 %

50 %

0 %

always

never

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل (كما بالمثال).

1. speak English - I - always - English class - in my.

I always speak English in my English class.

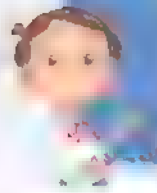
2. meat - She - red - eats - never.

3. football - plays - He - with his friends - sometimes.

4. wake up - We - before 7 am - sometimes.

5. have - I - usually - a sandwich for lunch.

6. Ola - work - never - is - after - tired.



Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Faten does a lot of activities every

- ☐ a month ☐ b day ☐ c year ☐ d season

2. Faten always breakfast with her family.

- ☐ a cooks ☐ b eats ☐ c makes ☐ d buys

3. Faten eats meat.

- ☐ a never ☐ b always ☐ c sometimes ☐ d often

4. Faten often plays in the club.

- ☐ a football ☐ b basketball ☐ c tennis ☐ d squash

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I usually have a for lunch.

- ☐ a sandwich ☐ b football ☐ c book ☐ d pen

2. How often do you books?

- ☐ a drive ☐ b play ☐ c eat ☐ d read

3. Mona usually a shower at 8 am.

- ☐ a does ☐ b has ☐ c makes ☐ d speaks

4. I never eat red

- ☐ a homework ☐ b games ☐ c meat ☐ d English

5. often do you play video games?

- ☐ a What ☐ b How ☐ c When ☐ d Where

6. Ayman usually wakes before 6 am.

- ☐ a with ☐ b at ☐ c on ☐ d up



3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. tired - Amal - after - is - work - never.

2. have - I - usually - a sandwich - dinner - for.

(2024)

3. eat - always - on - shawerma - We - Friday.

4. wake up - We - before - sometimes - 7 am.

5. you - How often - visit - do - grandparents - your?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It (**never is**) snowing in Cairo.

2. I (**always am**) in bed at 11 p.m.

3. I (**always**) play tennis. I can't play it.

4. How often (**do**) he visit his grandpa?

5. I (**visits always**) my grandparents on Saturdays.

6. We always (**speaks**) English in English class.

7. A: How (**never**) do you read books? B: I always read books.

8. Hany never goes to school late. He (**never**) goes to school early.

9. She doesn't like dessert. She (**always**) eats it.

10. A: How (**many**) does he play video games? B: He never plays video games.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how often do you go to the park

2. i always help my mom and dad

Lesson

Pronunciation

/b/

استمع إلى المفردات:



ull ثور



each شاطئ



ee نحلة



ear دب

/p/



ull يسحب



each خوخة



ea حبة بازلاء (بسلة)



ear كمثرى

يصدر كلاً من الصوتين /ا/ و /و/ من نفس المنطقة في مقدمة الفم عن طريق الضغط بالشفقتين على بعضهما البعض. لكنهما مختلفين جداً حيث أن الصوت / / لا يحدث اهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية أثناء نطقه ويسمى () ويخرج هواء بانفداع من الفم عند نطقه ، أما الصوت / / فإنه يحدث اهتزازاً في الأحبال الصوتية () مع عدم خروج هواء من الفم أثناء التطق حيث يشبه حرف (ب) في اللغة العربية.

وللتمييز بين النطقين يمكنك إحضار قطعة من الورق وتثبيتها أمام فمك ومحاولة نطق الصوت /p/ تلاحظ اهتزاز الورقة بسبب الهواء الخارج من الفم أثناء نطق الصوت وعند محاولة نطق الصوت / / تلاحظ عدم اهتزاز الورقة نتيجة لعدم خروج هواء من الفم.



Silent letters

الحروف الصامتة في اللغة الانجليزية

- هناك بعض الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية تحتوي على بعض الحروف غير المنطوقة (الصامتة) تسمى **Silent letters** ومن أمثلة هذه الكلمات:

- لا تنطق حرف (b) إذا جاء قبله حرف (m) ← lam

- لا تنطق حرف (g) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ← si n

- لا تنطق حرف (w) إذا جاء بعده حرف (r) ← write

- لا تنطق حرف (k) إذا جاء بعده حرف (n) ← now

- لا تنطق حرف (t) إذا جاء بعده حرف (l) ← cas le

- لاحظ الحرف المحدد في كل كلمة غير منطوق (صامت):



lam

حمل / خروف صغير



si n إشارة / لافتة



clim يتسلق



rist معصم



i land جزيرة

2

two الرقم ٢



nee ركبة



our ساعة

3+2= 5

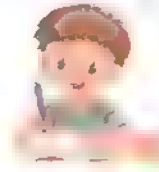
ans er إجابة



nife سكين



cas le قلعة



rite يكتب



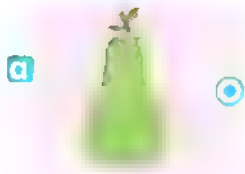


What's the weather like?



start with 'p' in green. Then look and match:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'p' باللون الأحمر والكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف 'p' باللون الأخضر.
ثم انظر وصل:



1- bull

2- pull

3- bear

4- pear

5- beach

6- peach

7- bee

8- pea



2

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي سمعتها. ثم استمع وردد:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1- bee / pea

2- bull / pull

3- bear / pear

4- beach / peach

5- bee / pea

6- bull / pull

7- bear / pear

8- beach / peach



Look, think and write. Write down the words you see in the words?

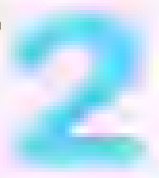
انظر واقرأ واستمع ماذا يحدث للأحرف المكتوبة بخط ثقیل في الكلمات؟



1

climb

2



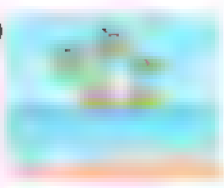
two

3



hour

4



island

5



knife

6



write

Listen and write. Then read aloud.

استمع واكتب ثم اقرأ بصوت عالي :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

He was 1 on an 2 with his 3 cats. He fell (1) onto a beach and hurt (2) his 4 But he was very lucky (3) – he had a 5 so he could make a bandage (4) and then 6 a message (5) in the sand. Two 7 later, people came to save (6) him!



Arabic Meaning

- ١- سقط
- ٢- جرح
- ٣- محطوط
- ٤- ضمادة
- ٥- رسالة
- ٦- ينقذ



Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع اغير الكتاب



1. My family went to the beach last
☐ a year ☐ b week ☐ c month ☐ d holiday
2. My sister Hala hurt her
☐ a arm ☐ b wrist ☐ c leg ☐ d foot
3. My father put on Hala's leg.
☐ a a bandage ☐ b a knife ☐ c a sign ☐ d ice
4. My came to see my sister's leg.
☐ a uncle ☐ b aunt ☐ c teacher ☐ d people

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A pea is
☐ a white ☐ b green ☐ c red ☐ d blue
2. We can get honey from
☐ a bees ☐ b birds ☐ c bears ☐ d peas
3. A is my favorite fruit.
☐ a beach ☐ b carrot ☐ c bull ☐ d peach
4. The boy fell onto the beach and hurt his ...
☐ a wrist ☐ b island ☐ c castle ☐ d peach
5. In summer, I go to Alexandria to walk on the
☐ a bull ☐ b beach ☐ c peach ☐ d moon

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. could - He - bandage - make - a.
2. onto - fell - He - beach - a.
3. came - People - save - to - him.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. he was lucky .
2. which city has most rain, Gamal .



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

unsafe	غير آمن	torch	كشاف
power cut	انقطاع التيار		

Other words

extreme weather	طقس قاسي	extreme heat	الحرارة الشديدة
classmates	زملاء دراسة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
get dark	يحل الظلام	lightning	برق
frightening	مُخيف	electric wires	الأسلاك الكهربائية
black cloud	سحابة سوداء	candle	شمعة
wide	كبير / عريض / واسع	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
bits	قطع صغيرة	closer	أقرب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	
move	يتحرك	moved	
twist	يلف	twisted	
contact	يوصل	contacted	
damage	يدمر / يتلف	damaged	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
stand	يقف	stood	
find out	يكتشف	found out	
strike	يصعق	struck	
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	





Study the following

- 1 I was at school with my classmates. كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي في الفصل.
- 2 Then it started to get dark. - ثم بدأت تظلم.
- 3 There might be very strong winds. - قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جداً.
- 4 There might be heavy rain and lightning. قد يكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.
- 5 It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall. - قد لا يكون الخروج آمناً - يمكن أن تسقط الأسلاك الكهربائية.
- 6 There might be a power cut. قد يكون هناك انقطاع للتيار الكهربائي.
- 7 People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help. - قد يحتاج الأشخاص في الشارع أو المنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتكم.
- 8 Stay inside and keep dry. حاول أن تكون بالداخل وأن تبقى بعيداً عن المياه.
- 9 What might happen in a storm? ماذا يمكن أن يحدث في العاصفة؟
- 10 Make sure you have candles and torches. تأكد أن عندك شمع وكشافات.
- 11 Contact your friends and family to check they are safe. - اتصل بأصدقائك وعائلتك لتتأكد أنهم في أمان.
- 12 Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe. - لا تذهب لأي مكان بالقطار - ذلك غير آمن.
- 13 Help anyone who is afraid. - ساعد أي شخص خائف.
- 14 Don't stand near trees in case lightning strikes. - لا تقف بالقرب من الأشجار في حالة صعقة البرق.
- 15 Don't stand near wires - they could fall and give you an electric shock. - لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك. من الممكن أن تقع وأن تصاب بصدمة كهربائية.

Check (✓) the correct photo below?

اقرأ ما هو الطقس القاسي في إنجلترا الذي يصفه الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the _____ and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.



اقرأ بيانا آخرًا لحدث طقس قاسي. الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل خطأ. هل يمكن أن تصححها؟

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I **loked** out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there **were** a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to **sea**. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There **was** other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see **some** more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the **son** again and drove on through the desert!



Unit 15 What's the weather like?



الاحتياطات الواجب اتخاذها في حالة حدوث عاصفة رملية

اقرأ الإرشادات للحفاظ على الأمان في الجو القاسي. صل الإرشادات بالمجموعة الصحيحة. يمكن أن تصل نصيحة واحدة بالمجموعتين.

a Keeping safe in extreme heat:

b Keeping safe in a sandstorm:

- | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| 1- Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty. | 2- Wear a scarf to protect your face. | 3- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. | 4- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. |
| اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش. | ارتدي وشاح لحماية وجهك. | حاول قضاء الوقت في المباني الباردة التي بها تكييف الهواء. | ابق في الداخل حتى لا يدخل الرمل في فمك. |
| 5- Open the windows when there's a cool wind. | 6- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade. | 7- Eat small, light meals. | 8 If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car. |
| افتح النوافذ عندما تكون الرياح باردة. | لا تخرج. إذا توجب عليك الذهاب بالخارج، ابق في الظل. | تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة. | إذا كنت تقود السيارة، فحاول الوصول إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك. |
| 9- If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in. | 10- Wear light, cool clothing. | 11- Cover your head and face as much as possible. | 12- Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in. |
| إذا كنت في المنزل، فتأكد من إغلاق النوافذ حتى لا تدخل الرمال. | ارتد ملابس فاتحة اللون وخفيفة. | غطي رأسك ووجهك قدر الإمكان. | قم بإيقاف تشغيل التكييف لمنع دخول الرمال. |

4 Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل :

How to keep safe in a storm

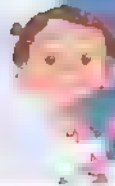
What might happen in a storm?

- There might be very strong winds.
- There might be heavy rain and lightning.
- It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall.
- There might be a power cut.
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.



How can you protect yourself?

- Stay inside and keep dry.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut.
- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.
- Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe.
- Help anyone who is afraid.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.
- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. anyone who is afraid.

- a** Help **b** Let **c** Leave **d** Annoy

2. We can use when there is a power cut.

- a** trains **b** buses **c** trees **d** torches

3. Turn the air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

- a** on **b** of **c** off **d** out

4. You should contact your friends and family to check that they are

- a** lazy **b** safe **c** save **d** afraid

5. To keep safe in a sandstorm, you should wear a scarf to protect your

- a** leg **b** hand **c** foot **d** face

6. Open the windows when there's a wind.

- a** hot **b** cool **c** dark **d** black

7. We mustn't stand near trees when lightning

- a** strikes **b** stops **c** checks **d** protects

8. In a sandstorm, the windows, so no sand can get in.

- a** move **b** shut **c** open **d** destroy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

frightening - destroy - weather - dark - winds

Yesterday, I was in the garden with my friends. The was bad.
First, it started to get There were very strong It was
very We went back home in my father's car.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a scientist. Last week, he drove to the desert with his friend Ali to find out new desert animals. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car, but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. It was good because they did not hit them. Suddenly, the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His father went to the desert by

☐ a bus

☐ b train

☐ c car

☐ d bike

2. His father is a/an

☐ a scientist

☐ b engineer

☐ c doctor

☐ d teacher

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the father go to the desert?

4. What did they see through the window?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. might - There - cut - be - a power.

2. dry - _____ - and - inside - keep.

3. _____ - in - happen - storm - might - a?

4. clothing - Wear - cool - light.

5. might - strong - There - be - very - winds.

6. moved - the - _____ - away - sandstorm.



Unit 6 What's the weather like?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. (Helping) anyone who is afraid.
2. There (was) some cars on the road.
3. There (were) a lot of sand in the desert.
4. How can you ... (protected) yourself in a storm?
5. My family and I (was) driving through the desert at 5 p.m.

6 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. how can you protect yourself, Mona
.....
2. hany and nabil help anyone who is afraid
.....

7 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

- 1- What might happen in a storm?
- 2- How can you protect yourself?

Review



The weather



cloud
سحابة



cloudy
ملبد بالغيوم



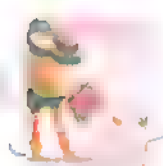
rain
مطر



rainy
ممطر



wind
رياح



windy
عاصف [شديد الريح]



sunny
مشمس



snow
جليد

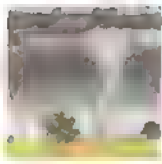


ice
ثلج



rainbow
قوس قزح

Extreme weather



tornado
إعصار



tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر



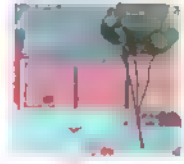
strong winds
رياح قوية



sandstorm
عاصفة رملية



heat wave
موجة حارة



flood
فيضان

Conjugation of verbs

المضارع والمضارع

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

believe	يعتقد / يصدق
call	ينادي
rain	تمطر
stay	يبقى
destroy	يدمر
twist	يلف

Past

ماضٍ

believed
called
rained
stayed
destroyed
twisted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

bring	يحضر
fall down	يسقط
get up	ينهض
hear	يسمع
feel	يشعر
stand	يقف
strike	يصعق

Past

ماضٍ

brought
fell down
got up
heard
felt
stood
struck



What's the weather like?

Pronunciation

/p/



ull يسحب



each خوخة



ea

حبة بازلاء (بسلة)



ear كمثري

/b/



ull ثور



each شاطئ



ee نحلة



ear دب

Language Functions

المكان + حالة الطقس + It's going to be +

- It's going to be hot in Egypt.

نستخدم،

للتنبؤ عن
حالة الطقس

Grammar

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع → (inf.)

He - She - It - اسم مفرد → (inf.) s / es / ies

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. وتأتي ظروف التكرار عادةً بعد (verb to be) وقبل الفعل الأساسي في الجملة كما يلي:

100%
always
دائمًا

80%
usually
عادة

70%
often
غالبًا

50%
sometimes
أحيانًا

0%
never
أبداً

- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

23 How often

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط.

How often $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do} \rightarrow \text{I - you - we - they} \\ \text{does} \rightarrow \text{he - she - it} \end{array} \right\} + \text{inf. الفعل}$

- How often do you play football?

- I always play football.



Answers to texts

The desert

- 1 The desert has a very special climate. It has very hot days and very cold nights. Some people live in the desert. These people try to keep cool in the day and warm at night. The desert is a very interesting place.

Lesson 4

The sandstorm

- 2 Last week, there was a sandstorm. My family and I went to the Pyramids by car. While we were on the road, there was a sandstorm. My father told me to shut the windows of the car. My father couldn't see the road. The sand was everywhere. When the storm went away, we arrived at the Pyramids late.

Lesson 4 & 5

How to keep safe in a storm

- 3 You should stay inside and keep dry in a storm. Contact your friends and family to check they are safe. Don't go anywhere by car. Help anyone who is afraid.

Activity - Unit 6

The weather

- 4 We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. In summer we go to Alexandria. It is cool in summer in Alexandria. We enjoy playing on the beach. We enjoy swimming in the sea. It's a fantastic city.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع لاختبار



1. Egypt is very in summer. (cold - rainy - hot)
2. The goes very high. (lightning - temperature - wind)
3. Most people go to the in summer. (beach - school - bank)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

classmates - yesterday - school - did

- A : Where did you go ?
B : I was at
A : What you do there?
B : I met my

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ و اجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, I was driving through the desert to visit my uncle. He has a big house near Al Fayoum. I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm on the road. It was very dangerous. I closed all the windows. It was very dark. There was a lot of sand in the air.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Why were you driving through the desert?
2. What was in the air?

B- Choose the correct answer:

3. I saw a in the desert.

a sandstorm

b camel

c truck



4. I looked out of the

☐ a door

☐ b window

☐ c balcony

5. I closed all the

☐ a doors

☐ b boxes

☐ c windows

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There might be a power

☐ a shade

☐ b cloud

☐ c cut

2. Don't near wires.

☐ a stands

☐ b stand

☐ c standing

3. The is my favorite fruit.

☐ a pear

☐ b bull

☐ c pear

4. A heat wave is when the temperature goes

☐ a small

☐ b high

☐ c low

5. I always to the club on Saturday.

☐ a go

☐ b goes

☐ c going

E- Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. my - Yesterday - went - outside - family.

2. never - - after - tired - work.

3. didn't - cars - - on - see - the road.

4. does - it - - in - summer - rain?

5. hot - - summers - Egypt - in - are.



Activities

الأنشطة 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع: اقرأه



1. I was _____ when I heard about the heat wave.
☐ a happy ☐ b excited ☐ c afraid ☐ d amazed
2. I was worried about my _____.
☐ a grandpa ☐ b grandma ☐ c parents ☐ d friends
3. I bought some lemons from the _____.
☐ a market ☐ b store ☐ c supermarket ☐ d garden
4. I made _____ for my grandma.
☐ a orange juice ☐ b tea ☐ c lemonade ☐ d cake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's very _____ in the summer in Egypt.
☐ a cold ☐ b cloudy ☐ c hot ☐ d high
2. When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a _____.
☐ a sandstorm ☐ b flood ☐ c heat wave ☐ d tornado
3. Don't stand near _____ in a storm.
☐ a friends ☐ b wires ☐ c school ☐ d station
4. Wear light cool clothing in a _____.
☐ a winds ☐ b heat wave ☐ c heavy rain ☐ d tidal wave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

power - dark - outside - heavy - frightening

I was at school with my classmates. It started to get . We went . Then, I saw a storm and it was . There were dark clouds. It started to rain. It was a rain.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice weather in Egypt. My favorite season is spring. The weather is often warm. The trees become brown and we can see flowers and baby animals. At the weekend, I go to the park and fly my kite. In spring, I wear a jacket in the evening. It sometimes rains, but not for long. In spring we can play a lot of games. We can play football, tennis and other ball games.

(2024)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about the
☐ a water ☐ b pollution ☐ c weather ☐ d sports
- In the evening I wear
☐ a jeans ☐ b shorts ☐ c a jacket ☐ d a scarf

B- Answer the following questions:

- What's your favorite season?
- Where do you go at the weekend?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- can - How - yourself - protect - you?
- have - of - a nice - We - variety - weather.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Noha (**never is**) tired after work.
- Emad always (**wake**) up before 8 am.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

yasser doesn't play in the street ..

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

- 1- How is the weather in hot summers? 2- What do you wear in hot summers?



Objectives of Review 2

أهداف المراجعة الثانية

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللفظية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Lesson 2: Writing and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع الطلاب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To learn about a famous writer in Ancient Greece.

- يتعلم الطلاب عن كاتب مشهور في اليونان القديمة.

Lesson 3: Term 1 project

- To learn about climate change and how it affects Egypt.

- يتعلم الطلاب عن تغير المناخ و مدى تأثيره على مصر.

Lesson 4

Units 4 , 5 & 6

استمع و اشر

Top-script



استمع الى النص:



- 1- waterfall
- 4- lake
- 7- dentist
- 10- scientist
- 13- river

- 2- journalist
- 5- rainbow
- 8- mountain
- 11- island
- 14- grasshopper

- 3- sneakers
- 6- cloudy
- 9- snow
- 12- ice
- 15- forest

Start



1-



2-



3-



6-



5-



4-



7-



8-



9-



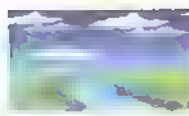
12-



11-



10-



13-



14-



15-

Finish



Review

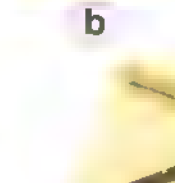
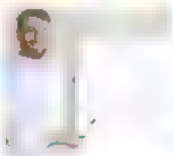
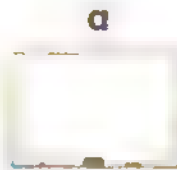
wrong sentences:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام الجمل في زمن الماضي المستمر وصحح الجمل الخاطئة.

1. He were doing his homework with his mom yesterday.
He was doing his homework with his mom yesterday ☒
2. She was have breakfast at 8 am.
She was having breakfast at 8 am ☒
3. I was speaking English at 5 pm. ☒
4. They were making paper kites yesterday. ☐
5. We were swimming in the sea in the evening. ☐
6. You were talking to your friends and watching TV. ☐

sentences with must or mustn't :

املأ الأشخاص بالأدوات الخاصة بوظائفهم ، ثم اكمل الجمل باستخدام must أو mustn't .



1. I _____ get up early to look after my animals.
2. I _____ be unkind when I interview people.
3. I _____ give time to each of my sick people.
4. I _____ finish the lesson half an hour early to catch my train.
5. I _____ prepare delicious food for all the guests.
6. I _____ drive too fast – it's dangerous.

Key vocabulary

a famous writer	كاتب مشهور	path	طريق
Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة	traveler	مسافر
moral	درس أخلاقي	shine	تسطع الشمس
(be) called	تسمي	pull tighter	يضيق الملابس
fables	أساطير خرافية	blow	ينفخ
patient	صبور	take off	يخلع

Study the following

1 Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece.

كان أيسوب كاتبًا مشهورًا في اليونان القديمة.

2 He wrote stories called "fables"- they always had a moral

كتب قصص عن أساطير خرافية وكان دائمًا بها درس أخلاقي.

3 A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people

- الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا العطف ومساعدة الآخرين.

4 The North wind was trying to make the Sun angry

- حاولت الرياح الشمالية أن تغضب الشمس.

5 He pulled his coat tighter around him

لقد ارتدى معطفه بإحكام حول نفسه.

6 The North wind was angry and blew away

كانت الرياح الشمالية غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا.

7 Be kind and patient with people

كن عطفًا وصبورًا مع الناس.

فكر في السياحة البيئية مرة أخرى. تذكر السياحة البيئية هي أن تكون عطوفا على البيئة والسكان. لون الأشياء التي تخص البيئة باللون الأصفر والأشياء التي لا تخص البيئة باللون الأحمر.



استمع إلى النص

Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.



2 Read and listen to one of Aesop's fables

اقرأ واستمع إلى واحدة من أساطير إيسوب ثم اختر:

- ☐ Listen to the person who is against you and don't do things.
- ☒ Always wear a coat, even when it's sunny.
- ☒ Sometimes you can get people to do things by being clever, not by being strong.



استمع إلى النص

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling. At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said.

The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!



3

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى ورتب أحداث القصة بالترتيب الصحيح:

1. The North Wind is not nice to the Sun.
2. The Sun wins the competition.
3. The Sun tries to make the man take his coat off.
4. The Sun suggests a competition.
5. The North Wind tries to make the man take his coat off.
6. The Sun sees a man on the path.

1

4

استمع واكتب الكلمات ثم صل:

Transcript



استمع إلى النص:



1- strawberry

2- throw

3- street

4- three

5- strong

6- screen

7- eye

8- town

9- boy

10- loud

a



1- s.....

b



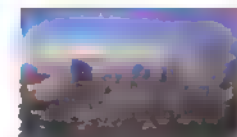
2- t.....

c



3- s.....

d



4- t.....

e



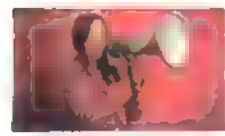
5- s.....

f



6- s.....

g



7- e.....

h



8- t.....

i



9- b.....

j



10- l.....

Lesson 3

TERM 1 - PROJECT 1

Key vocabulary

climate change	تغير المناخ	evaporate	يتبخر
affect	يؤثر على	rise	ترتفع
glacier melting	انصهار الجليد	sea levels	مستويات البحر
drought	جفاف	less crops	محاصيل أقل
flood	فيضان	melt	ينصهر
agriculture	الزراعة	salty	مالح
save	يوفر	soil-less farming	الزراعة بدون تربة
solution	حل	specific greenhouse	صوبة زجاجية خاصة
temperature	درجة الحرارة		

Study the following

1. the world now we are the weather
- التغير المناخي هو تغير الطقس بسبب التلوث.
2. the temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting
- ترتفع درجة الحرارة وينصهر الجليد.
3. the sea gets higher we get floods.
- عندما يرتفع البحر يحدث الفيضان.
4. When the temperature rises we get drought because the water evaporates
- عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.
5. Climate change might cause problems to agriculture
- تغير المناخ يسبب مشاكل في الزراعة.
6. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses
- تأخذ المحاصيل كمية مناسبة من الماء والعناصر الغذائية في صوبات زجاجية خاصة.



ما هو تغير المناخ؟ What is Climate Change?

تغير المناخ وكيفية تأثيره على مصر- ما هو تغير المناخ؟



This is a glacier melting



a drought



a flood

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.



ما هي بعض الحلول لمشكلة تغير المناخ؟ What are some solutions to the problem of climate change?

فكر في حلول ممكنة . انظر إلى هذا المثال.

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.



ما هي بعض الحلول لمشكلة تغير المناخ؟ What are some solutions to the problem of climate change?

COP27 اجتماع عالمي هام جدا عن البيئة. يتحدث الكثير من الناس في الدول الأخرى عن كيفية مساعدة البيئة وتوقف تغير المناخ سيعقد هذا العام في شرم الشيخ فكر أنت ومجموعتك فيما تقوله إلى COP27 عن مصر والعالم.



Activities

9.556

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع لخير الكتاب



1. Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with
☐ a tornado ☐ b pollution ☐ c flood ☐ d tidal wave
2. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are
☐ a staying ☐ b changing ☐ c melting ☐ d covering
3. When the sea gets _____, we get floods.
☐ a lower ☐ b higher ☐ c smaller ☐ d wider
4. When the temperature rises, we get a _____.
☐ a drought ☐ b tornado ☐ c flood ☐ d storm

2 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Seham must _____ up the kitchen.
☐ a tidy ☐ b get ☐ c work ☐ d destroy
2. Amir _____ friends with other people in his community.
☐ a grew ☐ b blew ☐ c made ☐ d did
3. A : How _____ do you do karate? B : I never do it.
☐ a old ☐ b often ☐ c long ☐ d high
4. My mom _____ the meat with a sharp knife yesterday.
☐ a cut ☐ b swam ☐ c heard ☐ d met

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

office - games - scare - programmer - keen

Hi! My name's Mona. I want to be a computer ☐ _____ when I grow up. I'm not ☐ _____ on being outside, so I want an ☐ _____ job. I love playing computer ☐ _____. I also really enjoy solving problems.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I read a book about life in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians were very successful. They built the pyramids and a lot of temples. There were many jobs. For example, farmers, scribes and craftsmen. Farmers grew many crops, grains, vegetables and fruit. Craftsmen made beautiful paintings and sculptures. Scribes learnt hieroglyphs. They used hieroglyphs to write on the walls of their temples.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is mainly about the _____ in Ancient Egypt.
☐ a colors ☐ b jobs ☐ c clothes ☐ d houses
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the _____.
☐ a pyramids ☐ b paintings ☐ c Ancient Egyptians ☐ d temples

B- Answer the following questions:

- What did the farmers grow in Ancient Egypt? _____
- Where did scribes use hieroglyphs in the Ancient Egypt? _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- in - People - Egypt - worked - hard - Ancient. _____
- was - English - I - speaking - 5 pm - at. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- What were you _____ (study) at 7 pm yesterday?
- We _____ (must to) prepare the baby's food.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

it started to get dark _____

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

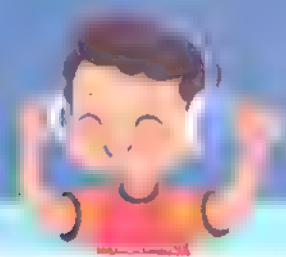
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

in Aswan - most fantastic place

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب المدرسي



LET'S REMEMBER

Narrator : Let's remember, Lesson 1, Exercise 2. Complete the table with the words in Exercise 1. Then listen, check, and say the words:

Speaker : Social media

cell phone	password		
do research	text message		
Transportation			
metro	boat	taxi	tram
Environment			
pollution	drought	traffic	flood

Unit ①

LESSON ①

Narrator : Unit 1, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Look and write:

Narrator : 1	Speaker : cake
Narrator : 2	Speaker : lime
Narrator : 3	Speaker : bean
Narrator : 4	Speaker : grape
Narrator : 5	Speaker : egg
Narrator : 6	Speaker : milk
Narrator : 7	Speaker : rice
Narrator : 8	Speaker : candy

Narrator : Unit 1, Lesson 3, Exercise 3. Read. Then listen and complete:

Narrator : 1	Speaker : I say, "Let's play!"
Narrator : 2	Speaker : Let's bake a cake
Narrator : 3	Speaker : Snails have tails.

Unit ②

LESSON ③

Narrator : Unit 2, Lesson 3, Exercise 2. Listen and check (✓) the words with long vowel sounds:

cry - fuel - make - cone - cube - feet

Unit ④

LESSON ③

Narrator : Unit 4, Lesson 3, Exercise 1. Listen and write. Then listen and repeat:

Speaker : The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

Unit ⑥

LESSON ②

Narrator : Unit 6, Lesson 2, Exercise 1. Write the words in the box in the correct place. Listen and check usually - often - sometimes

LESSON ③

Narrator : Unit 6, Lesson 3, Exercise 2. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen and repeat.

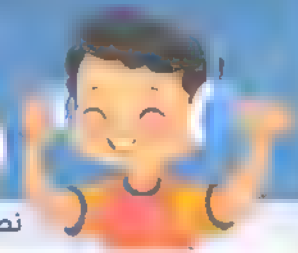
Narrator : 1	Speaker : pea
Narrator : 2	Speaker : pull
Narrator : 3	Speaker : bear
Narrator : 4	Speaker : peach
Narrator : 5	Speaker : bee
Narrator : 6	Speaker : bull
Narrator : 7	Speaker : pear
Narrator : 8	Speaker : beach

LESSON ④

Narrator : Unit 6, Lesson 3, Exercise 4. Listen and write. Then read aloud:

Speaker : 1- He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الوحدات والاختبارات الخاصة بكتاب (Bit by Bit)

Unit ①

Lesson ①

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle is a farmer. He grows onions and tomatoes in his field. He gets fresh eggs from chickens. He eats some eggs and sells some eggs at the market. He gets a lot of money at the market.

Lesson ② Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Today Omar's family was busy at home. They prepared breakfast in the morning. They ate ful medames, boiled eggs and bread. In the afternoon they had burger and french fries. Their mother made cake and yogurt for them in the dinner. Then, they watched TV.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ibrahim and his mom like going to the market to buy vegetables. Ibrahim likes healthy food. In the morning Ibrahim likes to drink milk.

Activity - Unit ①

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt has many famous meals like ful medames, molokhia, koshari and basbousa. I like these meals and help my mother to cook them. We can make molokhia into soup and make basbousa with important ingredients

like semolina, coconut, sugar, melted butter and yogurt. All these meals make our bodies healthy.

Unit ②

Lesson ① Part 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I like playing sports. My favorite sport is playing football. I go to the club two times a week. I like swimming, too, but I'm better at football than swimming. My brother Sameh is good at doing karate. We go together to the same club.

Lesson ②

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Soha is a good girl. She's very good at making cakes. She can help her mum in the kitchen, but she is bad at washing the dishes. She's great at making shawerma.

Lesson ③

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite sport is football. I love this sport very much. I can play with a team. We kick the ball with our feet on the pitch. I always win the match in my team. I'm very good at it.

Lessons ④

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are famous Egyptian sportswomen like Hedaya

Malak and Rania Elwani. Let's talk about Rania Elwani. She is a famous Egyptian swimmer. She was born on October 14, 1977. She began practicing swimming at the age of six. She won many gold and bronze medals.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I go to the tennis court in the club near my house to play tennis. I take a racket and a tennis ball.

Activity - Unit 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Pollution is a dangerous problem in our world. It destroys our life. People throw garbage in lakes, rivers and seas. The polluted water kills organisms that live in the water. We should find solutions to this problem and save water.

Unit 3

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last summer, I went to Alexandria on holiday with my family. I packed my suitcases. I took my sunglasses because it was sunny. I needed my swimming shorts. I like swimming. I took three blue T-shirts, too.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt, many people wear traditional Egyptian clothes. They wear galabeyas when they're celebrating special festivals. For example, they wear them for Eid. The galabeyas have long sleeves. They also have hidden pockets. A galabeya is usually white, but some people wear galabeyas with different colors.

Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ahmed's mother is good at making hats and T-shirts. Yesterday was a sports day, so Ahmed's mother made ten boxes of T-shirts. She gets a lot of money.

Lessons 4 - 5

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite clothes are T-shirts and shorts. I like wearing them in the summer. I also like my white cotton socks in winter. My sweater is striped. My favorite clothes are really smart.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Galabeyas are the most popular Egyptian clothing. Most men and boys wear galabeyas in Eid. Galabeyas are made from cotton. They have long sleeves

Activity - Unit 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday, my friend Ayman went to the shops with his father. He went there to buy his school uniform. At school, the children have to wear blue shirts. Boys wear dark blue trousers. Girls wear dark blue skirts. Ayman liked his school uniform.

Review 1

Activity on Units 1, 2 & 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My favorite recipe today is basbousa. I buy the

ingredients from the shop. Then, I mix these ingredients by hand. I bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. I make the syrup for about 10 minutes. Finally, I pour the syrup over the basbousa. It's a delicious dessert.

Unit 4

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Adel. I live in Alexandria. It's a big city in the north of Egypt. Alexandria has beautiful beaches. Alexandria Library is a good place to read books. Many people come to Alexandria in the summer. I like my city very much because its people are friendly.

Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hala's birthday was yesterday. Hala's mom made a nice strawberry cake. Hala's friends gave her nice presents. Hala and her friends played video games.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer

Hani is a good boy. He does a lot of activities every day. Yesterday, Hani was sleeping at 6 am. His sister Rasha was watering the flowers in the garden.

Activity Unit 4

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My cousin Sara went to Elephantine Island with her family last weekend. It's the most amazing place in Aswan. She visited the Aswan museum to see the old things. After that, she went on a boat trip on the island.

Unit 5

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ancient Egyptian women played a very important role in Ancient Egypt. They worked at home and could work outside. They cooked meals and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets and make sandals. They could sell them at the market.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Walid is a zoo keeper. Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth.

Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Tamer. I have a big house. My house has a big garden. There is a fence around the garden. I water the plants every day. I plant vegetable seeds in the garden.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer

My friend Magdy is a zoo keeper. Magdy looks after lions. Magdy gives water and food to animals. Water is important for animals.

Activity - Unit 5

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Farming was very important in Ancient Egypt. The farmers worked very hard. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They grew many crops like grains, vegetables and fruit.

Unit 6

Lesson 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Egypt we have a nice variety of weather. Egypt has very hot summers. The winters are cooler. There's a very special climate in the desert. It doesn't often rain in Cairo. Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo.

Lesson 2 Part 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday was hot and sunny. I stayed home. The weather was too hot. People walked in the shade of the trees in the street. My mother told me not to go out in that day. The temperature was 43 degrees. No one could do anything.

Lesson 2 Part 2

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My cousin Faten does a lot of activities every day. She always eats breakfast with her family. She never eats meat. She often plays tennis in the club.

Lesson 3

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name is Mohamed. My family went to the beach last year. I played on the beach. My sister Hala hurt her leg. She fell on her leg. My father put a bandage on it. My uncle came to see my sister's leg. She was very lucky.

Al-Azhar Test

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Egypt is very hot in summer. The temperature goes very high. Most people go the beach to enjoy the nice weather.

Activity - Unit 6

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I was afraid when I heard about the heat wave. I was worried about my grandma. I bought some lemons from the store. I made lemonade for my grandma.

Review 2

Activity on Units 4, 5 & 6

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Climate change is about how we are changing the weather with pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises these days, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

Bit be Bit
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

ملحق
تسميع المفردات
والواجب المنزلي

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

2025

5th
PRIMARY FIVE
FIRST TERM

دار غزة



للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

شيكولاته

دجاج

ليمون أصفر

موز

ليمون أخضر

مكسرات

جوز الهند

كعك محلي

بصل

بطيخ

أناناس

مانجو

فول

كشري

جرر

ارز

بيض

طماطم

صحي

بطاطس

غير صحي

سوق

مفضل

طازج

سهل

عسل

شاورما

مربي

مهلبية

حديقة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يأتي		يفرغ	
يشترى		يزور	
يفكر		يبيع	
ياكل		يجمع	
يحب		يزرع ينمو	
يملك		يحتاج	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We grow --- in our garden.

(2024)

☐ a eggs

☐ b limes

☐ c chickens

☐ d chocolate

2. We buy and sell things at the

(2024)

☐ a market

☐ b school

☐ c zoo

☐ d hotel

3. It is ----- to eat a lot of chocolate.

(2024)

☐ a useful

☐ b unhealthy

☐ c healthy

☐ d good

4. ----- about buying some lemons?

☐ a When

☐ b Where

☐ c How

☐ d Who

Dictation & Exercises

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

little - delicious - many - much - children

I love eating chocolate. Most ❶ _____ like to buy it. But eating too

❷ _____ is unhealthy. You should eat a ❸ _____. It's ❹ _____.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. buy - We - rice - bread - and - need to.

2. have - any - you - Do - , please - carrots?

3. would - I - to have - mahalabia - like - coconut.

4. favorite - Tarek's - healthy - is - fish - food.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about (eat) some carrots?

2. Would you (likes) an apple?

3. I would like (any) rice, please.

فنا إدارة فنا (2024)

4. There's (a) bread in the kitchen.

سريعة , فننا (2024)

5. It's raining. I'm carrying an (umbrellas) .

6. Let's (buying) some tomatoes.

7. Are there any (orange) in the market?



Lessons



Vocabulary

ساق الفاصوليا

ملوخية

عملاق

زبد

قلعة

بسبوسة

قفص

وصفة طعام

باليد

سميد

طاسة

زبادي

دقيق

مكونات الطعام

فرن

سكر

سكين

شراب [سائل محلي]

شكل ماسي [معين]

ملعقة طعام

عصير ليمون

حساء عدس

مسحوق الخبز

لوز



Adjectives

حر / طليق	سحر سحري
فقير	فظيع
غنى	عطوف
خاص مميز	ذهبي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينتزع		يتسلق	
يخلط		يعد	
يقطع		يصرخ	
يسقط		ينقذ	
يبيع		يحصل علي	
يقابل		يزن	
يشغل		يضيف	

Activities

Lessons 3&4



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

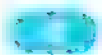
1. A is a very big person.

a castle

b giant

c cloud

d cage



2. We can the ingredients by hand.

☐ a meet

☐ b save

☐ c mix

☐ d boil

3. Most animals have

☐ a cakes

☐ b eggs

☐ c snakes

☐ d tails

4. We pour the over the basbousa.

☐ a syrup

☐ b tea

☐ c oil

☐ d soup

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

On Fridays, Mariam and her mother go shopping. They have everything ready in the shopping list. Mariam wants pineapple juice. Mom wants to buy two kilos of rice, a kilo of sugar and three kilos of mangoes. Also, mom wants some tomatoes and onions. She needs some eggs and cheese for breakfast. Then, they come back home on foot.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam wants juice.

☐ a mango

☐ b pineapple

☐ c orange

☐ d apple

2. Mom needs some eggs and cheese for

☐ a lunch

☐ b breakfast

☐ c dinner

☐ d snack

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When do Mariam and her mom go shopping?

4. How many kilos of mangoes does mom buy?

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

let's bake some cakes

Unit 2

I want to be healthy

Lessons

1 & 2



Vocabulary

كرة القدم	الهواء
الكاراتية	انبعاثات
السباحة	التنفس
كرة اليد	صوبة زراعية
الإبحار	كابوس
رياضة الكونغ فو	ظل
التنس	تنس الطاولة
الاسكواش	فريق
نادي	لعبة التايكوندو
مباراة	شطرنج

Adjectives

سليم	نائم
خطير	فظيع



Dictation & Exercises

مفزع	قذر / متسخ
مفضل	عظيم
رائع / مذهل	أفضل في

Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتسلق		يعد (طعام)	
يمشي		يرسم	
يقفز		يفوز	
يمارس		يلعب	
يرتب		يشاهد	
يجرب		يتنفس	



Activities Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

emissions - greenhouse - toxic - dangerous - breathing

Our city has a problem. People can't breathe because the air is .

There are too many from cars. I can't go to school, the air is too bad.

This is for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. My sister went to the hospital yesterday. She had problems with her .



Dictation & Exercises



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. good at - doing - ___ - math - brother - is.

2. helping - _____ - great at - mom - their.

3. karate - and - ___ - tennis - favorites - are.

4. sport - are - _____ - great at - you?

5. is - a popular - in - _____ - Egypt - sport.

6. are - good - _____ - you - squash - at?



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين الأقواس:

1. My cousin plays karate (but) basketball.

2. I think tennis is (bad) than football.

3. Hoda is great at (draw) pictures.

الغريسة - دائرة زمني (2024)

4. I don't eat fish, (and) I like meat.

5. My mom is good at (make) pizza.

6. Emad is good (on) playing chess.

Lessons



Vocabulary

ملعب كرة القدم

كرة التنس

ملعب كرة التنس

بطل

حمام السباحة

لاعب رياضي

تدريب

ميدالية

حذاء كرة القدم

سيره ذاتية

بدلة الكارتية

منافس خصم

مضارب الاسكواش

المسطحات المائية

نظارة السباحة

تلوث

مواد كيميائية

الكائنات الحية

المياة الجارية

شخص رياضي

الحياة البرية

جائزة

احتياجات خاصة

مياة الصرف

Dictation & Exercises

Adjectives

مذهل	ضار
هام / مهم	عطوف
ناجح	شيق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتجنب		يسبب	
يدمر		يقتل	
يتنافس		يركل	
يخسر		يرمي	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak was on April, 21, 1993.

- ☐ a bear ☐ b born ☐ c became ☐ d burn

2. Raja Garmash could win the bronze

- ☐ a athlete ☐ b competitor ☐ c medal ☐ d game

3. Polluted water wildlife in rivers.

- ☐ a destroy ☐ b throw ☐ c carry ☐ d cause

4. Dirty water make children and people

a wet

b well

c ill

d healthy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

team - swimming - court - club - sports

My name's Soha. I like playing ❶ I go to the ❷ with my mother. I'm very good at ❸ I win many medals and now I'm in the school ❹ But I'm very bad at tennis. I never win.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. take - shorter - You - showers - should.

2. sneakers - We - play - football - wear - to.

3. bought - a karate - Ayman - yesterday - suit.

4. throw - Never - garbage - a beach - in.

5. tennis - We - in - courts - have - the park.

6. play - your - Where - do - favorite - sport - you?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

what does hedaya want for the future?

October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

لن الاستماع آخر التمرين

- Laila likes _____ very much.
☐ a tennis ☐ b handball ☐ c basketball ☐ d football
- Laila practices basketball in the _____.
☐ a market ☐ b club ☐ c park ☐ d school
- Laila can _____ the ball into the basket.
☐ a kick ☐ b climb ☐ c throw ☐ d jump
- She wins the match with her _____ against the other team.
☐ a cousins ☐ b sisters ☐ c children ☐ d friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- _____ is my favorite dessert.
☐ a Koshari ☐ b Fish ☐ c Mahalabia ☐ d Shawerma
- A nightmare is a _____ dream.
☐ a good ☐ b happy ☐ c bad ☐ d clean
- My uncle _____ fresh eggs every day.
☐ a collects ☐ b grows ☐ c saves ☐ d turns
- Bake the basbousa in the _____ for 30 minutes.
☐ a oven ☐ b cupboard ☐ c glass ☐ d shower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

favorite - goggles - well - rackets - person

I like swimming very much. It's my **1** _____ sport. I wear my swimming **2** _____. I can swim **3** _____. For me, it's the best thing. I feel like a different **4** _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went to the club with my father to play a sport. My father asked me which sport I liked most. I chose taekwondo. My favorite taekwondo player is

Dictation & Exercises

Hedaya Malak. When I grow up, I want to be like Hedaya. She is a great player. She won many medals. She is also kind and helpful. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the with my father.

☐ a club

☐ b market

☐ c shop

☐ d match

2. Raja could win the medal.

☐ a bronze

☐ b silver

☐ c gold

☐ d glass

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "she" refer to?

4. Why is Hedaya Malak kind and helpful?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. kicks - best - I - high - like.

2. as - much - Save - water - possible - as.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda is great at (plays) tennis.

2. I'm good at football, (and) I'm bad at handball.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hedaya is a very kind person

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Water pollution

Guiding questions

1- What causes water pollution?

2- How can we solve this problem?

October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- My favorite sport is
☐ a squash ☐ b karate ☐ c taekwondo ☐ d tennis
- I practiced karate at the age of
☐ a seven ☐ b four ☐ c six ☐ d five
- I wear a white _____ to do karate.
☐ a coat ☐ b T-shirt ☐ c suit ☐ d dress
- I practice hard to win
☐ a rackets ☐ b medals ☐ c chess ☐ d goggles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We need _____ to make fresh juice.
☐ a cookies ☐ b pineapples ☐ c nuts ☐ d bread
- _____ the mixture into a baking dish.
☐ a Kick ☐ b Grow ☐ c Kill ☐ d Pour
- _____ water destroy wildlife in rivers.
☐ a Clean ☐ b Healthy ☐ c Polluted ☐ d Fresh
- We need swimming _____ in the pool.
☐ a goggles ☐ b rackets ☐ c trousers ☐ d sneakers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

collects - gives - market - juice - favorite

My grandpa has a mango tree in his garden. This mango tree is very big. It
 1 _____ him a lot of mangoes. He sells some of them at the 2 _____.
 He gets a lot of money. He takes some of mangoes to make 3 _____. It's his
 4 _____ fruit.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hoda. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six o'clock. I have boiled eggs and bread. My sister likes to have yogurt and fruit salad. My parents like to have

Dictation & Exercises

ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burgers, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

(2020) -

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hoda's parents like to have _____ for breakfast.
☐ a full medames ☐ b fruit salad ☐ c boiled eggs ☐ d burgers
2. The underlined phrase "**get up**" means _____.
☐ a go up ☐ b wake up ☐ c come up ☐ d climb up

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hoda go in the afternoon?
4. Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. would - you - **What** - like - eat - to? _____
2. dangerous - for - children's - **Emissions** - lungs - are. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Are there any _____ (**climb**) in the bag? (2024) -
2. Kareem is good at _____ (**climb**) mountains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i love watching football matches _____

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقره إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite dessert

Guiding questions

- 1- What's your favorite dessert?
- 2- How do you make it?

Lessons



Vocabulary

منقط	نظارة شمس
مخطط	شورت سباحة (مايوه)
أكمام	بلوفر
حزام	كوفية (شال)
تاج	تي شيرت
زى خاص	عقد
قفازات (جوانتي)	جلابية
رداء / ثوب (روب)	بيجامة
مركز تسوق (مول)	حذاء رياضي
جيوب	بالطو
ملابس مصرية	مهرجان احتفال
رحلة قصيرة	ذهب ذهبي
شنطة سفر	شكل نمط

Adjectives

مميز خاص	تقليدي
شعبي محبوب	خفي / غير ظاهر
مصاب بحروق الشمس	كثير الالون / زاهي الالون
شيق مثير	متشوق - متحمس
محبوب	رائع / بارد

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحتاج		يأخذ	
يتذكر		يرتدي	
يُعبى (شنتط سفر)		يعطي	
يحتفل		يعرف	
يخبى		يحمى	
يستعير يسلف		يسافر	
يصاب بـ		يشترى	
ينام		يغادر	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Did you your suitcases for the holiday?
 a pack b wear c visit d give
2. I need my because it's sunny.
 a sweaters b necklaces c belts d sunglasses
3. She's wearing a crown on her
 a neck b head c leg d face
4. Noha wears her sunglasses to her eyes.
 a take b write c protect d borrow

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - do - know - What - to - want?
2. about - my - How - galabeya - best?
3. took - her - umbrella - Fatma - spotted
4. last - on - I - holiday - was - summer.
5. did - Why - make - suit - Samy - a new?

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Will I (**needs**) my scarf?
2. We (**go**) to the shopping mall yesterday.
3. It will (**being**) sunny tomorrow.
4. Can you (**giving**) me some information?
5. Laila bought a new dress to (**wore**) in her party.
6. Gamal and Yasser (**are**) pack their suitcase tomorrow.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للناس:

what do you usually wear

.....



Lessons 3 - 4 & 5



Vocabulary

صانع أحذية	احتفالات
جنى صغير (جن)	أعياد
كافى	كتان
زى مدرسى	الوان زاهية
رابطة عنق (كرافطة)	الخامة
بنطلون	المقاس
جوارب (شراب)	العمر
جاكيت	فاتح / باهت
صديرى	غامق
قنعة مكسيكية (سمبريرو)	قصّة
جيبّة	ذهب
زوج من (أحذية مثلاً)	نقود
وجبة	جلد مدبوغ
يوم رياضى	ورشة

Dictation & Exercises

Adjectives

طيب	مدهش رائع
أمين	سعيد
فقير	جديد
جميل	صغير قليل
لذيذ	أنيق
مدهش	متعب

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يؤمن يعتقد		يدفع (مالاً)	
يرقص		يكتشف	
يشكر		يترك يغادر	
يصف		يختبئ	
يجرب يقيس		يقص	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In my school, girls have to wear gray

☐ a rackets

☐ b skirts

☐ c goggles

☐ d jigsaws

2. It's very hot today. I have to wear a

☐ a jacket

☐ b coat

☐ c T-shirt

☐ d sweater

3. The shoemaker hard, but he had no money.

☐ a worked

☐ b hid

☐ c left

☐ d found

4. Girls in Mexico are wearing Mexican dresses.

☐ a amazed

☐ b traditional

☐ c delicious

☐ d surprised

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cotton - wearing - gloves - stripes - comfortable

My favorite clothes are pajamas. I like **1** them in the summer. They are **2** . They are made from **3** . I like the pajamas with the **4** .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Abdallah. I live in Qena. I'm in primary 5. I go to El-Shrouk Primary School. At school, I wear dark blue trousers and a pale blue shirt. The girls in my school also wear a blue uniform. In the summer, it's usually hot in Qena. I usually wear shorts and T-shirts. Many men wear galabeyas in Qena. I usually go to the park to play football because I'm good at playing football. My brother Omar is good at tennis, but he is bad at football.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Qena, many men wear the

- a** shorts **b** skirts **c** uniform **d** galabeya

2. Omar is good at

- a** football **b** tennis **c** karate **d** handball

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's Abdallah good at?
4. What do girls wear in Abdallah's school?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. try - these - Can - sneakers - I - new?
2. got - a dark - I ve - sweater - red.
3. bright - Mexican - love - colors - girls.
4. is - a white - Hoda - skirt - checked - wearing.
5. cut - to - make - The - leather - shoemaker - shoes.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (**tidy**) my room yesterday.
2. Did the shoemaker's wife (**made**) the shoes?
3. I'm wearing (**leather - new**) shoes.
4. We (**has**) to wear a tie every day.
5. Ayman bought a (**cotton - black**) suit.

Unit 4

Looking after our world

Lessons



Vocabulary

غابة	نتيجة (تقويم)
معبد فيلة	تاريخ
شعاب مرجانية	رحلة قصيرة
غروب الشمس	مركب شراعى
مقابر النبلاء	زيارة
مدينة كبيرة	تمشية
نادر	ملئ بـ
فترة حكم	مدينة صغيرة
يصل إلى المدرسة	شكل
يسبح فى البحر	جبل
يتناول طعام الغداء	بحيرة
يستيقظ	شلال
حديقة النباتات بأسوان	جزيرة

Adjectives

رائع	هادئ
مشهور	مزين , مزخرف

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفتقد شخص		يفهم	
يحاول		يجد	
يسير (يمشي)		يذهب	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

oldest - smallest - Museum - city - Island

Last week, I visited my cousin in Aswan. It's a beautiful ❶ . I went by train and my cousin took me in his car. Then, we visited the Elephantine ❷ . It's the ❸ part of Aswan. Then, we went to the Aswan ❹ and saw old things.



Dictation & Exercises

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. go - We - for - can - walks - long.
2. Mona - - English - at - studying - 7 pm?
3. see - the sunset - - from - can - a felucca.
4. Nagwa - have - - trip - a good?
5. swimming - - in - the fish - the lake?

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was (**cleaned**) my bedroom.
2. Was Noha (**listen**) to music?
3. It's the (**more**) fantastic place.
4. While I (**watch**) TV, my father came.
5. I was traveling by boat when I (**see**) the island.
6. What (**was**) you doing yesterday morning?
7. Nabil (**didn't**) playing tennis at six yesterday.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you visit the museum
2. there are beautiful villages near Aswan

Lessons



Vocabulary

شارع	الحياة البرية
منتجع بيئي	التلوث
نزل بيئي	السكان المحليون
السياحة البيئية	رحلة طويلة
سائح بيئي	ثقافة حضارة
الشعاب المرجانية	أماكن تاريخية
البيئة	مريح
فندق	مدينة الغردقة
مشروع	مسمار قلاووظ (بورمة)
مقدم برامج	يخدش (يخرش)
مرشد سياحي	شاشة
واحات	يصرخ
مميزات	ثمرة فراولة
عيوب	قوى
حلقوم (حلق)	عرش

Dictation & Exercises

لؤلؤ	يرمي / يلقي
السير لمسافات طويلة	الغطس
إقامة المعسكرات (التحيم)	وادي

Adjectives

ممتاز	ودود
مبهر / خلاب	لطيف
رائع	أساسي / رئيسي
تام / كامل	نادر
مستدير	صديق للبيئة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يخلق / ينشئ		يدفع (مالا)	
يتلف / يدمر		يفهم	
يتعلق بـ		يتعلم	
يحفظ		يستنتج	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات

huts - local - project - environment - damage

Hi! My name's Sally. I'm doing a **project** about eco-tourism in Egypt. Eco-tourism is a **fantastic** **idea** for **local** people. Eco-tourists stay in small **huts** or pay to stay in people's houses.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. damages - the - **Tourism** - environment.

2. coral - **There** - in - reefs - the Red Sea - are

3. his - sat - king - on - **The** - throne

2024

4. fantastic - wildlife - in - **There** - are - lots

5. are - in - **The** - fascinating - buildings - Table

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات في الفراغ

1. My brother and I **(was)** swimming in the sea.

2024

2. Laila wasn't **(have)** lunch at 3 p.m yesterday.

3. **(Does)** Adel washing his car when it rained?

4. I **(don't)** having a great time yesterday evening.

5. When my father **(comes)** , I was studying math.



November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I'll help my mother to _____ our suitcases.
☐ a carry ☐ b pack ☐ c wash ☐ d close
- I'll take my swimming shorts and _____ .
☐ a sunglasses ☐ b dresses ☐ c T-shirts ☐ d socks
- Emad will take his _____ .
☐ a sweaters ☐ b sneakers ☐ c sunglasses ☐ d pajamas
- My mother will need her dresses because they are _____ .
☐ a excited ☐ b comfortable ☐ c striped ☐ d interesting

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- This shoemaker works in a big _____ .
☐ a workshop ☐ b hospital ☐ c bank ☐ d school
- We're _____ English at 8 pm yesterday.
☐ a having ☐ b studying ☐ c arriving ☐ d getting
- I got some cardboard paper to make _____ .
☐ a posters ☐ b clothes ☐ c sunglasses ☐ d salads
- There's no traffic in Aswan, so it's very _____ .
☐ a quiet ☐ b noisy ☐ c ugly ☐ d dirty

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

local - wildlife - looks - pay - dive

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It _____ after the environment and helps _____ people. Eco-tourists like to learn about local _____ , projects and local culture. They stay in small hotels or _____ to stay in people's houses.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Rasha and Noha are good sisters. They always help their mother at home. They go shopping with her every week. Last week, they went to the shopping mall to

Dictation & Exercises

buy clothes. Noha bought a red spotted dress and a yellow hat. Rasha bought a silver necklace and a checked skirt. They bought black sunglasses for their father because his birthday will be tomorrow. They went back home by bus at five.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The girls went to the shopping mall last
 a week b day c year d month
- Noha bought a red _____ dress.
 a checked b spotted c striped d sleeved

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to?
- Why did the girls buy sunglasses for their father?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- a great - Taba - holiday - is - for - good.
- shoes - made - Who - every - new - night?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I bought gloves to (**keeps**) me warm.
- While Amr (**sleeps**), his father came.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

alexandria is a big city

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your visit to the Elephantine Island

Guiding phrases

- in Aswan
- traveling by boat

November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع غير المكتمل



- Hatem lives in a / an _____ in Aswan.
☐ a museum ☐ village ☐ garden ☐ island
- Every ... Hatem rides a felucca.
☐ Monday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Wednesday
- Hatem can see lots of _____ in the Aswan Museum.
☐ plants ☐ statues ☐ paintings ☐ pictures
- Aswan Botanical _____ is amazing.
☐ Temple ☐ Garden ☐ Island ☐ River

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Tourists like diving in the Red Sea near coral _____.
☐ beefs ☐ reefs ☐ bells ☐ leaves
- Let's sit in the _____ of this tree.
☐ shore ☐ shelf ☐ shirt ☐ shade
- Toxic means that something is very _____ to eat.
☐ good ☐ delicious ☐ bad ☐ high
- There are hidden _____ in galabeyas.
☐ pockets ☐ sleeves ☐ vests ☐ ties

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rare - wildlife - hiking - pollution - valleys

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, _____ and camping. You can find _____, mountains, desert and the sea there. You can enjoy fantastic _____, like the Nubian ibex and _____ birds.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a poor shoemaker. One day, he slept after he bought some leather at the market because he was tired. When he woke up, he found



Dictation & Exercises

a very pretty pair of shoes on his table. He sold them and bought some food and more leather. The next morning, he found three elves making another pair of shoes. He thanked them and his wife gave them food and clothes. They made more and more. Everyone bought shoes from the shoemaker. He lived happily ever after.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The shoemaker was
a sick **b** poor **c** bad **d** angry
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
a shoes **b** elves **c** leather **d** market

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many elves did the shoemaker find?
4. What did the wife give to the elves?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صنع الحذاء عمر، الرئيس الصحيح للكويت حملاً:

1. looks - to - It - really - wear - cool.
2. the tombs - of - We - the Nobles - to - walked.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Ayman was (**wash**) the dishes.
2. They won't (**took**) their sneakers.

7 Punctuate the following:

صنع الملك الرئيس للبلاد:

the princess wore a beautiful crown

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب نصاً من ثلاثين (30) كلمة عن:

Traditional Egyptian clothes

Guiding questions

- 1- Why do people wear traditional clothes?
- 2- When do people wear them?

Unit 5 Jobs we do

Lessons



Vocabulary

رمل	تاجر
يتأكد	حرفيين
تمائيل	خباز
حبوب	صياد
الكتابة الهيروغليفية	طبيب
كاتب (عند الفراعنة)	مصر القديمة
مجوهرات	ملكة
سجلات	معبد
فلاحين	قمح
حرفيين	محاصيل
بذور الكتان	رموز ، علامات
الملكة الحاكمة	صنل
دواء	صفوف
دخل إيرادات	أعمدة
مدرسة أو كلية لتعليم الطب	صخور
غابة ممطرة	كابوريا
شمام	ضوء الشمس

النظام البيئي الصحراوي ..	النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة ..
النظام البيئي للبحيرات الصخرية ..	النظام البيئي البحري ..
مناطق ..	سكين حاد ..
زبون ..	صلة / علاقة ..
مصدر ..	رئيس عمال ..
حارس حديقة الحيوان ..	مدير ..

Adjectives

ناجح ..	قديم ..
كثير الألوان ..	طبي ..
غالي الثمن ..	مختلف ..
طبيعي ..	متصل ..

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتصل ..		يصنع ..	
يبقى حياً ..		يعطي ..	
يعمل ..		يعتني بـ ..	
يصبح ..		يقضي (وقت) ..	
يزرع ..		ينسج ..	
يتكون من ..		يخبز ..	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

meals - outside - care - weave - flax

Women in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They worked at home and .
They cooked . . . cleaned the house and took of their
children. Women could . . . baskets, bake bread and make sandals.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - sharp - I - a - knife.
2. looks - A zoo - animals - keeper - after.
3. wake - her - Manal - up - must - brother.
4. had - a job - in - Everyone - Egypt - Ancient.
5. hieroglyphs - - years - spent - learning - many.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I (visit sometimes) my friend, Hisham.
2. You (must to) get up early.
3. Does Tarek (plays) tennis?
4. They (never are) ready to work.
5. Mona and Sally (drives) to work at 7 am.
6. You mustn't (eating) in the classroom.
7. Mona doesn't eat fish. She (always) eats it.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i must do my arabic homework



Lessons



Vocabulary

مسترخي

جرادة

حقل

فراشة

حديقة

فصل الخريف

يستمتع بوقته

فصل الربيع

عازف بيانو

فصل الشتاء

عالم

عالم أحياء

طبيب أسنان

صحفي

مبرمج كمبيوتر

موظف استقبال

يحل مشاكل

طبيب بيطري

تجربة في العمل

عملية جراحية

العمل الجماعي

وظيفة داخل مكتب

زملاء الفريق

يكون صداقات

حفل موسيقى

يخيف

في الخارج (خارج المباني)

سور

Adjectives

نظيف	كسول
متسخ	غريب
مجروح / مصاب	جوعان
حريص على	رائع
ممتلئ بـ	مدهش

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستمر / يواصل		يقضي وقت	
يجهز		تشرق الشمس	
يتجاهل		يفهم	
يرد		يكتشف	
يحصد		يسمع	
يحل مشكلة		يكتب	
يفضل		يمرض	
يفوز		يحضر	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I work with animals. I'm a _____.
☐ a baker ☐ b scribe ☐ c doctor ☐ d vet
2. A _____ likes music.
☐ a journalist ☐ b pianist ☐ c scientist ☐ d biologist
3. She doesn't like work. She's _____.
☐ a lazy ☐ b clever ☐ c healthy ☐ d lovely
4. Our garden is _____ of flowers.
☐ a fall ☐ b full ☐ c fell ☐ d feel
5. I'm not keen _____ being outside.
☐ a with ☐ b for ☐ c on ☐ d at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fun - money - harvest - think - important

We must work hard all our life. We ☐ _____ about the future, not just today.
 It's fine to have ☐ _____, but it's very ☐ _____ to work hard. We can get
☐ _____ and food when we work.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. work - the - in - I - concert - school.

2. work - out - We - best - solutions - the.

3. traveling - long - I - distances - like.

4. must - be - The - room - operation - clean.

5. cousin - is - My - programmer - computer - a.

6. a football - by - You - yourself - can't - match - win.





Lessons



Vocabulary

سحابة	قوس قزح
ملبد بالغيوم	عاصفه
مطر	مناخ خاص
ممطر	درجة الحرارة
رياح	ظل
مشمس	متنوع
جليد	دافئ
إعصار	يحافظ على برودته
موجه المد و الجزر	عاصفة رملية
رياح قوية	فيضان
صرخه	موجة حارة
طبيعي	أخبار

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعتقد يصدق		يأتي	
يسأل		يسقط	
ينادي		ينفض	
تمطر		يستمع	
يجري		يرد	
يطرق الباب		يتخطى	
يبقى		يشعر	
يحضر		يرقد	



Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:)

1. How _____ do you visit your grandpa?

☐ a many

☐ b old

☐ c often

☐ d much

2. I always _____ dinner for my family.

☐ a do

☐ b make

☐ c play

☐ d speak

3. We stay in the _____, when it's hot.

☐ a shade

☐ b door

☐ c shelf

☐ d roof

4. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very _____.

☐ a slow

☐ b high

☐ c small

☐ d fast

5. There's sand everywhere. It's a _____.

☐ a heat wave

☐ b tornado

☐ c flood

☐ d sandstorm

Dictation & Exercises



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

never - video - usually - homework - shower

Friday is a holiday. I ❶ _____ wake up at 9 am. I take a ❷ _____. I sometimes have breakfast with my family. Then, I often play ❸ _____ games. I ❹ go outside on Friday. I prefer to stay home.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- going - to be - It's - tomorrow - cloudy.
- Egypt - our - cooler - in - winters - are.
- green - is - _____ - very - city?
- often - does - it - Alexandria - rain - have?
- going - to - a sandstorm - Aswan - is - have.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- It _____ (**be**) hot and sunny last week.
- How often _____ (**does**) they watch TV?
- Soha always _____ (**read**) English story.
- Luxor is going to _____ (**has**) a storm.
- I _____ (**have usually**) a sandwich for lunch.

Lessons

3

4

5



Vocabulary

يحل الظلام	طقس قاسي...
زملاء دراسة	الحرارة الشديدة
مُخيف	عاصفة رملية
واسع / عريض	برق
قطع صغيرة	الأسلاك الكهربائية
كشاف	صدمة كهربائية
انقطاع التيار.....	شمعة
غير آمن	سحابة سوداء
حبة بازلاء (بسلة).....	أقرب
خوفه	كمثرى
دب	يسحب
سكينة	ثور
معصم	قلعة



Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يدمر		يقف	
يتحرك		يكشف	
يوصل		يصق	
يدمر يتلف		يؤدي	

Activities

Lessons 3-4&5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

afraid - check - destroy - dry - inside

My friend Omar is writing about how to keep safe in a storm. He makes notes.
First, you should stay ❶ and keep ❷ Contact your friends
and family to ❸ they are safe. Help anyone who is ❹

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. you - protect - How - can - yourself?

2. a scarf - - your - face - on.

3. hurt - many - A - people - tornado.

4. lots of - _____ - in - water - heat - extreme.

Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I heard the news of the weather in Egypt on TV. There was a sandstorm in Cairo. So I decided to stay home and closed all the windows in my house.

Then, I turned off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in. My father couldn't drive his car to work. Suddenly, there was a power cut. We were lucky because we had candles and torches. Then, the sandstorm moved away and the sky was clear.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I turned off _____ to stop sand coming in.

☐ a TV

☐ b air-conditioning

☐ c lights

☐ d torches

2. When the sand moved away, the sky was _____.

☐ a black

☐ b dark

☐ c clear

☐ d lucky

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Why couldn't the father drive to work?

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we are worried about the weather

December Test 1 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع أختار الكلمة

1. Ahmed is a programmer.

- ☐ a TV ☐ b tablet ☐ c cell phone ☐ d computer

2. When Ahmed was young, he loved computer

- ☐ a problems ☐ b games ☐ c screens ☐ d pictures

3. Ahmed enjoys problems.

- ☐ a speaking ☐ b playing ☐ c solving ☐ d reading

4. Ahmed works in a / an in a big building in Giza.

- ☐ a shop ☐ b office ☐ c house ☐ d apartment

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like walking on the

- ☐ a beach ☐ b peach ☐ c pear ☐ d bull

2. Essam never English.

- ☐ a stays ☐ b speaks ☐ c sleeps ☐ d swims

3. Make your windows are shut.

- ☐ a sure ☐ b shade ☐ c chair ☐ d shelf

4. Please, on the door before you enter.

- ☐ a feel ☐ b know ☐ c knock ☐ d lie

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

achieve - work - experiment - discuss - team

Teamwork is very important and useful. We work in a team when we are doing science ☐ When I help my father or mother with his or her work. When you work in a team, you should help your ☐ When there is a problem, you should ☐ it together to ☐ out a solution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

A scribe was an important job in Ancient Egypt. A scribe learnt to read and write. He spent many hours learning hieroglyphs and it was expensive. When we go to the temples, we can see hieroglyphs on the walls. They also kept records and lists for important things.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about
☒ a hieroglyphs ☐ a temple ☐ a scribe ☐ Ancient Egypt
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
☒ records ☐ walls ☐ hours ☐ scribes

B- Answer the following questions:

- Where can we see hieroglyphs?
- What did a scribe keep?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- fruit - My - is - favorite - a peach.
- opened - The - at - manager - midday - the restaurant.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We always (ate) shawerma.
- They (must to) study hard.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

It doesn't often rain in Cairo.

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to protect yourself in a storm

Guiding questions

- What might happen in a storm?
- What should you do to be safe?

December Test 2 on Units (5)&(6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1 Egypt has special

- ☐ a rain ☐ b climate ☐ c river ☐ d country

2. There's no in Egypt.

- ☐ a rain ☐ b cloud ☐ c snow ☐ d wind

3. Alexandria has around times more rain than Cairo.

- ☐ a seven ☐ b nine ☐ c eight ☐ d ten

4. The water from the Nile helps us to our crops.

- ☐ a grow ☐ b raise ☐ c sell ☐ d eat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It was hot and I was through the desert.

- ☐ a diving ☐ b driving ☐ c sleeping ☐ d knocking

2 A knew how to read and write well in Ancient Egypt.

- ☐ a farmer ☐ b trader ☐ c scribe ☐ d baker

3. The are buzzing all the day.

- ☐ a cats ☐ b ants ☐ c bees ☐ d grasshoppers

4. When the air is strong, it's always

- ☐ a cloudy ☐ b sunny ☐ c rainy ☐ d windy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

injured - check - keeps - bring - mind

Mrs Noha is a vet. She ❶ many animals at home. She helps sick or ❷ animals. She works inside when people ❸ their animals to her. She works outside when people call her to ❹ on the animals in their houses or farms.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My cousins Samira and Fatma live in Aswan. Yesterday, they heard the news of the weather in Aswan. There was a heat wave. The temperature was 50°C. The girls decided to stay home. They helped their mother to buy lemons, grapes and watermelons from the nearest store to cool them down. They helped their neighbor, Mr Adel. Mr Adel is a kind man in his 60s and lives with his son. His son went to his work early. They made lemonade to Mr Adel and he thanked them.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- There was a in Aswan
☐ a sandstorm ☐ tornado ☒ heat wave ☐ flood
- The girls decided to
☒ stay home ☐ play ☐ sleep ☐ walk

B- Answer the following questions:

- What did the girls buy from the nearest store?
- Why did Mr Adel thank them?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- prefer - to be - Would - a doctor - you?
- we - Make - the right - sure - food - have.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

أقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We often (comes) on time.
- Islam never (climbing) mountains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how often do you read stories

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Keeping safe in hot summers

Guiding phrases

- going to the beach
- have cold drinks

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول

إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الإجابة:

1. Ali's favorite food is
☐ a mangoes ☐ b oranges ☐ c chocolate ☐ d meat
2. Chocolate is
☐ a healthy ☐ b good ☐ c bad ☐ d unhealthy
3. He likes chicken, fish and
☐ a bread ☐ b rice ☐ c salad ☐ d milk
4. Ali likes playing sports with his
☐ a brother ☐ b friend ☐ c sister ☐ d cousin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need to pack my clothes in the ... to travel.
☐ a sunglasses ☐ b sneakers ☐ c pocket ☐ d suitcase
2. We can buy and sell things at the
☐ a school ☐ b library ☐ c park ☐ d market
3. Scientists think that people are causing change.
☐ a weather ☐ b climate ☐ c temperature ☐ d greenhouse
4. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's
☐ a economy ☐ b scribes ☐ c skills ☐ d baskets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rich - cage - poor - giant - angry

Jack and his mother didn't have money. They were ☐ . Jack saw a very big ☐ . He also saw a hen in the ☐ . Next to the hen were some golden eggs. Jack took the hen and sold the golden eggs. Jack became ☐ at the end.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: امراً البص ثم أحب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This text is about Omar's
☐ a school ☐ b favorite food ☐ c village ☐ d job
- Lemon is a kind of
☐ a candy ☐ b fruits ☐ c vegetables ☐ d nuts

B. Answer the following questions:

- What do farmers raise?
- What does Omar's mom make?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- is - weather - What - like - the?
- jobs - Tourism - people - gives - local - for.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- How about (buy) some grapes?
- We (was) playing tennis at 3 pm yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للناس:

how did he go to school

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقوله إسثائة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- going to Alexandria
- playing and swimming

Holidays

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. People in Ancient Egypt _____ very hard.
☐ a played ☐ b sang ☐ c worked ☐ d slept
2. _____ planted many crops.
☐ a Traders ☐ b Farmers ☐ c Craftsmen ☐ d Scribes
3. Traders traveled up and down the _____.
☐ a Nile ☐ b sea ☐ c ocean ☐ d lake
4. Scribes knew how to read and _____.
☐ a grow ☐ b sell ☐ c run ☐ d write

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack is very _____, he has no money.
☐ a rich ☐ b poor ☐ c strong ☐ d happy
2. A _____ is a very bad dream.
☐ a smoke ☐ b museum ☐ c nightmare ☐ d sweater
3. When I play football, I wear my football _____.
☐ a boots ☐ b racket ☐ c goggles ☐ d suit
4. A _____ is when the temperature goes very high.
☐ a tidal wave ☐ b sandstorm ☐ c heat wave ☐ d flood

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

night - animals - vet - operation - food

I'm Hany. When I'm older, I want to be a because I love animals. I think this is a good job for me because I like helping . Sometimes a vet works inside. If an animal needs an , the room has to be very, very clean. The worst part of this job is if an animal gets sick at , I'll get out of bed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Tourism is very important for a lot of countries. It gives local people jobs. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures. But tourism can also damage the environment. It can create too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places or monuments. People should try eco-tourism because eco-tourism looks after the environment. In Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The general idea of the text is about
☐ a fishing ☐ b tourism ☐ c animals ☐ d hospitals
- Tourism can create too much
☐ a oxygen ☐ b water ☐ c carbon dioxide ☐ d milk

B Answer the following questions:

- What does tourism give local people?
- Why should people try eco-tourism?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- is - squash - He - match - a - watching.
- are - people - The - friendly - local - very.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- What (was) they doing at ten o'clock yesterday?
- I went to the market (buy) some vegetables.

7 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للاتي:

what would you like to eat

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- fruit and vegetables
- healthy and delicious

My favorite food

3

إدارة طوخ التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My friends and I went to

☐ a Aswan

☐ b Cairo

☐ c Alexandria

☐ d Giza

2. We went there

☐ a yesterday

☐ b last month

☐ c today

☐ d this morning

3. We visited

☐ a the zoo

☐ b the pyramids

☐ c the Elephantine Island

☐ d the museum

4. It's one of the greatest in the River Nile.

☐ a islands

☐ b seas

☐ c lakes

☐ d canals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle planted an apple tree in his

☐ a office

☐ b library

☐ c room

☐ d garden

2. Camels live in the

☐ a sky

☐ b sea

☐ c desert

☐ d greenhouse

3. Dresses are types of

☐ a sports

☐ b meals

☐ c clothes

☐ d teams

4. Tourism gives for local people.

☐ a jobs

☐ b jokes

☐ c clothes

☐ d food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hot - play - green - lovely - eat

When I was young, I could go to the park . I could ❶ with my friends.
The grass was ❷ and the sky was blue. It was ❸ to have rain after
a very ❹ day and I enjoyed so much.



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family in Cairo. I will stay in my uncle's farm in the summer holiday. I will go there to see the flowers he planted in the spring. So I won't go to the beach in this summer. I like to draw, so I will buy some crayons, chalk and paper to draw a picture for what I will see because I like painting so much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed goes to his uncle's _____ in summer.
☐ a farm ☐ b city ☐ c town ☐ d shop
- Ahmed will buy chalk and paper because he likes _____.
☐ a writing ☐ b reading ☐ c drawing ☐ d playing

B. Answer the following questions:

- How old is Ahmed? _____
- Why won't Ahmed go to the beach this summer? _____

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- There - tomatoes - aren't - any - the fridge - in. _
- squash - playing - I - am - at - good. _

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She didn't _____ (finishes) her homework yesterday
- I like _____ (play) football and basketball.

Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i usually get up early _____

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إسشائة من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My trip to Aswan

Guiding phrases

- how to travel
- places to visit



Tests

إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's
☐ a summer ☐ b winter ☐ c fall ☐ d spring
2. The bees are
☐ a drinking ☐ b working ☐ c playing ☐ d buzzing
3. The ants are
☐ a working ☐ b playing ☐ c eating ☐ d sleeping
4. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time
☐ a playing ☐ b relaxing ☐ c working ☐ d flying

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. are my favorite fruit.
☐ a Pineapples ☐ b Beans ☐ c Eggs ☐ d Onions
2. We need to look after our
☐ a sky ☐ b dream ☐ c sun ☐ d planet
3. I wore a galabeya to stay
☐ a hungry ☐ b unhappy ☐ c sad ☐ d cool
4. A wrote everything down and kept records.
☐ a scribe ☐ b doctor ☐ c craftsman ☐ d farmer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

flying - sandwiches - football - plays - watch

My uncle Samy takes his family to the park every Friday. There, he with his children. They play . The mother makes a lot of . They have lunch and eat ice cream. In the park, they can see birds and lots of flowers and trees.

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My favorite thing to bake is cake .This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then, weigh out the ingredients. Then, you mix the flour, sugar, milk and melted butter. Then, you can add coconut and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the cake in the oven for 30 minutes. When it's cold, you can add melted chocolate on the top. It looks really pretty.

A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- You need to turn your on to get it hot.
☐ a light ☐ b school ☐ c oven ☐ d home
- Bake the cake in the oven for minutes.
☐ a 10 ☐ b 20 ☐ c 30 ☐ d 40

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is your favorite thing to bake?
- What are the ingredients of the cake?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- sun - us - The - and - heat - gives - light.
- must - after - You - the - look - environment.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I'm good (on) playing tennis.
- I was (.....) by boat to the island with my friends.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للدلي:

reem has a crown on her head

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة يساويه من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

- What sport are you good at?
- What is the most popular sport in Egypt?

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. People in Ancient Egypt very hard.
☐ a played ☐ b grew ☐ c sang ☐ d worked
2. Most people worked as
☐ a bakers ☐ b farmers ☐ c traders ☐ d fishermen
3. Egyptian craftsmen were
☐ a skillful ☐ b bad ☐ c lazy ☐ d not good
4. Everyone Ancient Egyptian craftsmen.
☐ a killed ☐ b created ☐ c respected ☐ d threw

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to be a I like making beautiful pots from clay.
☐ a trader ☐ b scribe ☐ c fisherman ☐ d craftsman
2. When the is strong, it's always windy.
☐ a sun ☐ b air ☐ c sky ☐ d star
3. There is no , so the island is very quiet.
☐ a traffic ☐ b farms ☐ c rivers ☐ d building
4. Alexandria is a
☐ a town ☐ b village ☐ c country ☐ d city

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

belt - good - crown - pockets - spotted

Hoda is wearing a beautiful dress. The dress is ☐ with a ☐
 There are two ☐ on it. Her sister is wearing a ☐ on her head.
 She looks like a princess.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Water pollution is when harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas. Water pollution can kill fish, birds and crabs that live in the water. It can

also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We can stop water pollution. We can save as much water as possible, take shorter showers, avoid running water and never throw garbage in or near a lake or a beach.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Water pollution is
☐ a dangerous ☐ b beautiful ☐ c interesting ☐ d helpful
2. water can make children and old people ill.
☐ a Salty ☐ b Fresh ☐ c Clean ☐ d Dirty

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is water pollution?
4. How can we stop water pollution?



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. to - They - the - went - library - to - read.
2. My - grows - uncle - onions - potatoes - and.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I'm good at (**play**) basketball.
2. He (**don't**) like karate.



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

We're going on a picnic on friday



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A computer programmer

Guiding phrases

- office job
- solving problems

6

إدارة شرق المنصورة التعليمية



Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- I was very yesterday.
☐ a cold ☐ b rainy ☐ c hot ☐ d windy
- A heat wave is when the temperature goes very
☐ a low ☐ b high ☐ c little ☐ d small
- We opened the at night when it was cool.
☐ a windows ☐ b doors ☐ c fridges ☐ d cars
- Our mom made to cool us down.
☐ a coffee ☐ b tea ☐ c lemonade ☐ d milk



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I want "Om Ali" for tonight.
☐ a breakfast ☐ b desert ☐ c dessert ☐ d lunch
- A vet on the animals in people's houses or farms.
☐ a checks ☐ b brings ☐ c solves ☐ d prefers
- The galabeya is very cool because it is made of
☐ a cotton ☐ b leather ☐ c plastic ☐ d paper
- made things from clay, wood, and gold.
☐ a Traders ☐ b Doctors ☐ c Vets ☐ d Craftsmen



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - garden - family - grows - onions

Ahmed lives in a big house. He lives with his ¹ There is a big ² in the house, where his father ³ many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He has chickens, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the ⁴



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Saturday, our school made a trip to one of the clothes factories in Al-Mahala. We went there on the school bus. **There**, we saw how cloth is made. They made cloth in a factory and made clothes like shirts, suits and trousers in another one. We got a rest in one of the restaurants. We had our lunch there. The food was delicious. We went home in the evening. It was a wonderful trip.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**There**" refers to the
☐ a bus ☐ b restaurant ☐ c factory ☐ d school
- They went to the factory by
☐ a bus ☐ b car ☐ c train ☐ d plane

B. Answer the following questions:

- Where did they have a rest?
- When did they go to the factory?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- went - the - Salma - to - store.
- French - bad - is - He - at - speaking.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I (**get**) a new phone a week ago.
- You (**must to**) shout in the classroom.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he bought a new shirt last week

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- chicken and vegetables
- good health

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

السمع وأحتر لإجابة الصحيحة:

اقرأ التعليمات قبل الإجابة

- Hamza's father is a
☐ a doctor ☐ tour guide ☐ teacher ☐ farmer
- Tour guides show the country they are visiting.
☐ tourists ☐ engineers ☐ fishermen ☐ students
- Tour guides need to be
☐ bad ☐ sad ☐ friendly ☐ impolite
- Tourists should have a holiday.
☐ bad ☐ terrible ☐ awful ☐ good

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

احتر الادعية الصحيحة:

- A is a very large building built a long time ago.
☐ a castle ☐ cage ☐ room ☐ box
- I must tidy the kitchen. It's messy.
☐ on ☐ up ☐ of ☐ in
- I wear black on my hand in winter.
☐ shoes ☐ pants ☐ gloves ☐ sunglasses
- We mustn't talk in the
☐ library ☐ street ☐ park ☐ playground

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

beach - care - swimming - park - keep

When the summer comes, the weather becomes hotter. Many people like to go to the beach. They enjoy People sometimes have meals on the , swim in the water, sing and dance. Some people keep the beach clean, but others don't , so we can find much trash on the beach. We should teach those people how to their environment clean.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could

weave baskets, bake bread and make sandals and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut. Everyone in Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "Ancient" means very
☐ a tall ☐ b high ☐ c old ☐ d new
2. The text is about
☐ a Kings in Ancient Egypt ☐ b Women in Ancient Egypt
☐ c Scribes ☐ d Craftsmen

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What could women make and sell at the market?
4. How do you know that the Ancient Egyptians women were very successful?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. black - is - The air - toxic - and.
2. the Nile - grows - in - Cotton - Delta.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There aren't (**some**) figs in the fridge.
2. He (**catch**) the bus to Giza every day.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

would you like an orange, ahmed?

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Guiding phrases

- take part in exciting activities
- stay in comfortable huts



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hany likes
☐ a food ☐ b sports ☐ c drinks ☐ d birds
2. He loves watching matches.
☐ a football ☐ b basketball ☐ c squash ☐ d tennis
3. He is at playing football.
☐ a bad ☐ b sad ☐ c good ☐ d happy
4. He is bad at playing
☐ a football ☐ b basketball ☐ c squash ☐ d tennis

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. is the connection between living things and non-living things.
☐ a Ecosystem ☐ b Desert ☐ c Weather ☐ d Island
2. My shoes are made of
☐ a feather ☐ b leather ☐ c wood ☐ d wool
3. A / An is a very bad dream.
☐ a emission ☐ b smoke ☐ c nightmare ☐ d breath
4. A: What's your favorite ? B: I like chicken.
☐ a drink ☐ b food ☐ c sport ☐ d subject

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

taekwondo - prizes - medal - flag - won

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian athlete. She started practicing
 ❶ at the age of seven. She won many ❷ at the age of 14.
 She also won the bronze ❸ in 2016. She is one of the two people who
 carried the Egyptian ❹ at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba. The local people are very friendly. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything for a great holiday.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about
☐ a Luxor ☐ b Delta ☐ c Taba ☐ d Cairo
- The underlined word "hiking" means
☐ a sleeping ☐ b running ☐ c walking ☐ d singing

B- Answer the following questions.

- Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba?
- What activities can eco-tourists enjoy in Taba?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- do - play - How often - you - tennis?
- am - Island - on - 1 - Elephantine.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He is good at ... (draw) pictures.
- I ... (see) my brother yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

what would you like to eat

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your job in the future

Guiding questions

- What's your future job?
- Why do you want to do this job?

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ali went to Dahab last
☐ a month ☐ b year ☐ c week ☐ d day
2. Ali was traveling by
☐ a car ☐ b train ☐ c bus ☐ d boat
3. Tourists enjoyed the air and the sea.
☐ a polluted ☐ b toxic ☐ c black ☐ d clean
4. They were to leave.
☐ a happy ☐ b sad ☐ c excited ☐ d nervous

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I always wear my swimming in the sea.
☐ a goggles ☐ b rackets ☐ c pockets ☐ d crowns
2. This man is a man. He is a very, very big person.
☐ a small ☐ b kind ☐ c giant ☐ d lazy
3. The makes shoes and bags.
☐ a dentist ☐ b pianist ☐ c shoemaker ☐ d dressmaker
4. Ancient Egyptian made beautiful paintings and jewelry.
☐ a scribes ☐ b craftsmen ☐ c traders ☐ d doctors

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sleeves - robe - galabeya - shorts - gloves

I live in Aswan. It's usually very hot here. I'm wearing ❶ and a T-shirt.
 Many men wear the ❷ This is a long white ❸ It's made from
 cotton. The ❹ are so long, so we don't get sunburned.



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because of the pollution that planes cause. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
☐ tourism ☒ eco-tourism ☐ ecosystem ☐ system
- Eco-tourists don't like to travel by
☒ a trains ☐ b cars ☒ c planes ☐ d buses

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does eco-tourism look after?
- Where do eco-tourists stay?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- your - What - healthy - is - favorite - food?
- visited - Elephantine - We - yesterday - Island

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I (**usually**) drink cola. I don't like it.
- She (**is**) taking photos yesterday.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

it's going to be cold in cairo.

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Ancient Egyptian women

Guiding questions

- How did women work in Ancient Egypt?
- Who was the famous queen in Ancient Egypt?

10

إدارة المؤتمر التعليمي

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. Sara invited Marwa to visit

☐ a Alexandria

☐ b Cairo

☐ c Luxor

☐ d Aswan

2. Marwa and Sara are going to the

☐ a beach

☐ b cinema

☐ c market

☐ d park

3. It is in Alexandria in winter.

☐ a hot

☐ b cold

☐ c rainy

☐ d nice

4. Sara doesn't have

☐ a shoes

☐ b a jacket

☐ c a hat

☐ d an umbrella

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali is very He has a lot of money.

☐ a poor

☐ b clever

☐ c rich

☐ d bad

2. I like eating chocolate, but it is

☐ a fruits

☐ b unhealthy

☐ c sugar

☐ d healthy

3. I saw a who caught a big and beautiful fish.

☐ a fisherman

☐ b chef

☐ c carpenter

☐ d baker

4. We use a to cut vegetables.

☐ a spoon

☐ b cage

☐ c glass

☐ d knife

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

much - meals - outside - junk - exercise

To be healthy you should eat a balanced diet. Never drink cola or eat ☐ food. You shouldn't eat too ☐ chocolate. Do any kind of ☐ like football or swimming. Play games with your friends ☐.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: (اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sama is a good student. She traveled to Japan with her school last month. She was very happy because the trip was very interesting. She took two planes: from Cairo to Dubai, then from Dubai to Tokyo. It is the capital of Japan. The trip took a very long time. It was a tiring trip; it took eighteen hours until they reached the hotel. Sama liked the Japanese people. They were very helpful and gave good directions when Sama got lost. Sama liked the technology and the rules in Japan.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The trip was interesting but
 a nice b good c short d tiring
2. It took Sama hours to reach the hotel.
 a 8 b 18 c 80 d 800

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sama like in Japan?
4. How many planes should Sama take in this trip until back home?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. like - What - for - lunch - would - you?
2. bought - He - a bag - nuts - of - yesterday.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They (doesn't) like fish.
2. She is good at (play) squash.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Let's play football in the park

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إسبائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

Air pollution

- 1- What causes air pollution?
- 2- Why is air pollution dangerous?

11

إدارة مطروح التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

من الاستماع لخر الكراسة:

- Dina likes to eat food.
☐ a bad ☐ b delicious ☐ c healthy ☐ d salty
- is her favorite food.
☐ a Fish ☐ b Rice ☐ c Potatoes ☐ d Chicken
- Sometimes, Dina likes to eat
☐ a juice ☐ b chocolate ☐ c cookies ☐ d candy
- She exercises and well every day.
☐ a tidies ☐ b sleeps ☐ c plays ☐ d meets

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I wear my football to play with my friends.
☐ a glasses ☐ b boots ☐ c belts ☐ d books
- My mom's dress is made of
☐ a plastic ☐ b wood ☐ c cotton ☐ d paper
- things can grow.
☐ a Living ☐ b Non-Living ☐ c Dead ☐ d Cold
- Farmers their plants every day.
☐ a water ☐ b drink ☐ c burn ☐ d make

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - farm - grows - school - chickens

My uncle is a farmer. He has a big ❶ He ❷ onions and tomatoes. He also raises chickens and ducks. He gets fresh eggs from the ❸ He eats some eggs and sells some eggs at the ❹ I like going there because it is so fun to collect the eggs.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's winter and the grasshopper is
☐ a thirsty ☐ b happy ☐ c hungry ☐ d excited
2. The grasshopper knocks on the ... door.
☐ a cat's ☐ b bees's ☐ c mouse's ☐ d ant's

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the grasshopper hungry?
4. What does the grasshopper learn from the ant?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. a scarf - Wear - protect - face - your - to.
2. the - are - The butterflies - in - flying - sun.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We wouldn't have ... (some) oranges.
2. She is very good at ... (cook).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

she wore a green cotton dress - - - - -

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقبرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- very smart
- blue trousers

My school uniform

Tests

إدارة بيا التعليمية

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Soha is bad at playing

- ☐ a football ☐ b tennis ☐ c handball ☐ d volleyball

2. Soha is good at making

- ☐ a cakes ☐ b rice ☐ c meat ☐ d pizza

3. Omar is Soha's

- ☐ a cousin ☐ b brother ☐ c uncle ☐ d son

4. Omar is years old.

- ☐ a 24 ☐ b 34 ☐ c 14 ☐ d 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Bananas and apples are food.

- ☐ a bad ☐ b dirty ☐ c unhealthy ☐ d healthy

2. A helps sick animals.

- ☐ a teacher ☐ b doctor ☐ c vet ☐ d dentist

3. Hoda was lunch at 3 pm yesterday.

- ☐ a studying ☐ b arriving ☐ c having ☐ d sleeping

4. You should take showers to save water.

- ☐ a colder ☐ b shorter ☐ c longer ☐ d hotter

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clothes - near - people - home - source

Egypt is famous for the River Nile. It's the most important of fresh water. It's for a lot of animals. These animals live or in the river. The River Nile is important for, too.

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Noha. I'm in grade five. I love healthy food. I have breakfast with my family at seven am. I have eggs, cheese and orange juice. My sister Salma likes to have ful medames and bread. I help my mom in the kitchen, I set the table for lunch. Today, I will have chicken and vegetables for lunch. I love being healthy.

A- Choose the most appropriate answer:

- Noha is in grade
☐ one ☐ four ☐ five ☐ six
- Noha loves food.
☐ healthy ☐ unhealthy ☐ bad ☐ fot

B- Answer the following questions:

- When does Noha have breakfast?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- I - my - Yesterday - room - tidied.
- grass - mustn't - You - the - on - walk.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- There aren't (**some**) figs in the fridge.
- He (.....) the bus to Giza every day.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

would you like an orange, ali?

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- oldest part
- full of history

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Ali is very good at
☐ a football ☐ b handball ☐ c squash ☐ d sailing
2. Ali can move
☐ a fast ☐ b slow ☐ c quiet ☐ d bad
3. Ali can play in a with walls.
☐ a playground ☐ b park ☐ c small court ☐ d stadium
4. Ali sometimes plays
☐ a tennis ☐ b kung fu ☐ c karate ☐ d swimming

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can buy and sell things at the
☐ a school ☐ b market ☐ c park ☐ d club
2. I study plants. I am a
☐ a dentist ☐ b vet ☐ c biologist ☐ d receptionist
3. Elephantine Island is the part of Aswan.
☐ a oldest ☐ b newest ☐ c fattest ☐ d slowest
4. Mona is in her She is going to sleep.
☐ a sneakers ☐ b sunglasses ☐ c goggles ☐ d pajamas

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fields - animals - hard - buzzing - butterflies

It's a good day in spring. The bees are ❶ and the ❷ are flying in the sun. The ants are working ❸ The sun is shining and the ❹ and the gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The most popular sport in Egypt is football. Egyptians like football very much. Children like to play football in the parks and in the clubs. They can also play football at school. Egyptians also like watching football matches on TV. They like watching the matches of Mohamed Salah. He is a very good football player. Mohamed Salah is very fast. He plays football very well. All the Egyptians people like Mohamed Salah. He is my favorite football player.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The children can also play football at _____.
 a the bank b school c the hotel d the museum
- Mohamed Salah is very _____.
 a fast b fat c old d slow

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
- How does Mohamed Salah play football?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- things - were - Craftsmen - making - at - good.
- wear - usually - What - you - do?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- There isn't _____ (some) milk in the fridge.
- Ali is good at _____ (play) football.

7 Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i was studying English

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- eat healthy food
- play sports

Keeping healthy

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Noha is a
☐ a vet ☐ b shoemaker ☐ c doctor ☐ d teacher
- She works with
☐ a cars ☐ b cakes ☐ c computers ☐ d animals
- Sometimes she works and people bring their animals to her.
☐ a outside ☐ b at school ☐ c inside ☐ d in the park
- She goes to people's houses or
☐ a farms ☐ b parks ☐ c gardens ☐ d kitchens

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- My shoes are made of
☐ a leather ☐ b wood ☐ c wool ☐ d metal
- Hedaya won the bronze
☐ a key ☐ b metal ☐ c medal ☐ d racket
- At bedtime, I wear my
☐ a shoes ☐ b pajamas ☐ c suitcases ☐ d sunglasses
- There are very nice places
☐ a walking ☐ b traveling ☐ c looking ☐ d staying

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

افقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - little - keep - rain - sand

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. This means that the people live in the desert try to ❶ cool in the day and ❷ at night. It doesn't often ❸ in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's ❹ when you look at London.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: امراً البص ثم أحب عن الأسئلة:

I can't breathe, because the air is black and toxic. Inside the house we use air freshener to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside, there are too many cars and much traffic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to hospital because of problems with his breathing.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The air is and toxic.
 a black b white c blue d yellow
- There are cars.
 a many b much c little d a lot

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why can't we go to school?
- Who had to go to hospital?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح للكوين جملاً:

- sometimes - tennis - play - I ,
- sleeping - He - yesterday - at - wasn't - night.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

امراً واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة لكلمات من بين الأقواس.

- I would like (any) eggs, please.
- I must (does) homework.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للنص:

what sports do we have in egypt?

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إشارية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

My favorite sport

- Which sport do you like?
- Where do you play it?



Tests

إدارة قوس التعليمية



Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My favorite sport is

- ☐ a tennis ☐ b football ☐ c squash ☐ d chess

2. We play this sport on the

- ☐ a pitch ☐ b court ☐ c pool ☐ d shop

3. I play it in a

- ☐ a brother ☐ b farmer ☐ c doctor ☐ d team

4. I'm very at it.

- ☐ a bad ☐ b good ☐ c sad ☐ d ill



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He uses his swimming when he goes to pools.

- ☐ a sunglasses ☐ b goggles ☐ c rackets ☐ d boots

2. are gases from cars or factories.

- ☐ a Greenhouses ☐ b Cakes ☐ c Emissions ☐ d Food

3. Women wear around their necks.

- ☐ a sunglasses ☐ b necklaces ☐ c pajamas ☐ d shorts

4. Eco-tourism helps to the wildlife.

- ☐ a protect ☐ b build ☐ c buy ☐ d ask



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fantastic - eco-tourism - pollution - local - valleys

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. It's an excellent example of a part of Egypt where
❶ works well. I can find ❷ , mountains, desert, and the sea
there. I can find ❸ wildlife. I can enjoy the environment. The ❹
people are friendly. I can do a lot of activities. I like helping tourists.



Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Ola is a vet. She loves her job and animals. She gets up early and goes to hospital. She likes helping a lot of kinds of animals. She checks the people's animals and give them medicine. She can go to people's houses or farms to check on them. She feels so happy when animals get better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola is a
 a teacher b nurse c vet d doctor
2. She helps the animals and gives them
 a money b cakes c food d medicine

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ola check?
4. Where does Ola work?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. live - a city - in - in - you?
2. was - kind - to be - honest - and.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How about (eat) mangoes?
2. Do you have (some) carrots?

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we have a variety weather in Egypt

Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases

- looks after animals
- gives them a bath

11 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Elephantine Island is a place.
☐ a fantastic ☐ b bad ☐ c dirty ☐ d ugly
2. It's in
☐ a Luxor ☐ b Giza ☐ c Cairo ☐ d Aswan
3. and tourists visit it.
☐ a French ☐ b Chinese ☐ c Japanese ☐ d Egyptians
4. It's a beautiful
☐ a mountain ☐ b lake ☐ c island ☐ d tower

12 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. was a system of writing in Ancient Egypt.
☐ a Medicine ☐ b Painting ☐ c Hieroglyphs ☐ d Money
2. I went to Aswan car.
☐ a by ☐ b at ☐ c in ☐ d on
3. We use gold to make
☐ a soil ☐ b wood ☐ c paper ☐ d jewelry
4. Fish and are living things.
☐ a crabs ☐ b rocks ☐ c sunlight ☐ d sand

13 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cold - cotton - dark - like - galabeya

Our uniform is dark blue skirts for girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue

- ① shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's ② , we wear
 ③ blue vests or jackets. I ④ my uniform!



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a scientist. Last week, he drove to the desert with his friend Ali to find out new desert animals. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car, but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. It was good that they did not hit them. Suddenly, the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- His father went to the desert by
☐ a bus ☐ b train ☐ c car ☐ d bike
- His father is a/an
☐ a scientist ☐ b engineer ☐ c doctor ☐ d teacher

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why did the father go to the desert?
- What did they see through the window?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- often - do - How - play - you - tennis?
- and - things - Traders - sold - bought - different.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس

- How about (go) to the zoo, Ali?
- Karim never (drink) cola, he thinks it is unhealthy.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

she went to egypt to see the pyramids

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقوله إثنائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

- What jobs were in Ancient Egypt?
- How did Ancient people work?



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

- The galabeya is a/an _____ Egyptian clothing.
☐ a modern ☐ b new ☐ c traditional ☐ d usual
- The galabeya is made from _____.
☐ a cotton ☐ b wool ☐ c plastic ☐ d feathers
- The galabeya has _____, but they are hidden.
☐ a gloves ☐ b ties ☐ c pockets ☐ d sleeves
- The sleeves are _____, so we don't get sunburned.
☐ a short ☐ b long ☐ c small ☐ d tiny

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- How often do you _____ to school?
☐ a try ☐ b meet ☐ c walk ☐ d have
- When the sea gets higher, we get a _____.
☐ a flood ☐ b drought ☐ c tornado ☐ d sandstorm
- A _____ works in a hotel.
☐ a teacher ☐ b receptionist ☐ c scientist ☐ d dentist
- The air is black and _____.
☐ a delicious ☐ b clear ☐ c beautiful ☐ d toxic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

competitor - kind - prize - needs - medal

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She was born in 1993. She is a very ☐ person. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special ☐ _____, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her ☐ and lost. Raja could win the gold ☐.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

People have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal.

Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of fresh water and practise a sport every day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People have meals every day.

- ☐ a once ☐ b one ☐ c three ☐ d five

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to

- ☐ a people ☐ b meals ☐ c animals ☐ d birds

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. When do people have breakfast?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

صع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - favorite - What - food - your?

2. were - traveling - We - by - train.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They didn't (cleaned) the room yesterday.

2. I would like (any) tea, please.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

I live in cairo. . .

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding phrases:

- fantastic place
- no traffic

My city (Aswan)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Sami went on a school trip to
☐ a Aswan ☐ b Cairo ☐ c Alexandria ☐ d Giza
2. Alexandria is a beautiful
☐ a city ☐ b zoo ☐ c farm ☐ d park
3. Sami went to Alexandria by
☐ a plane ☐ b bus ☐ c car ☐ d train
4. It was an exciting
☐ a garden ☐ b trip ☐ c skirt ☐ d bird

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Water pollution can organisms that live in water.
☐ a play ☐ b protect ☐ c kill ☐ d clean
2. Ashraf wants for dessert.
☐ a eggs ☐ b rice ☐ c mahalabia ☐ d meat
3. Emad looks after people's teeth. He's a
☐ a dentist ☐ b carpenter ☐ c farmer ☐ d teacher
4. A is an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
☐ a shade ☐ b giant ☐ c grass ☐ d greedy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

understand - Aswan - with - place - friends

I'm Ali. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic ¹ It's in
² and there's lots to see. I was traveling by boat to the island with my
³ We were trying to ⁴ the Elephantine name. We think it's
the shape.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sara plays squash at the .
☐ a park ☐ b club ☐ c zoo ☐ d garden
- The underlined word "parents" means _____.
☐ a teachers ☐ b sisters ☐ c brothers ☐ d father and mother

B- Answer the following questions:

- How old is Sara?
- What does Sara want to be?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- to - play - Tarek - a racket - bought - tennis
- do - my - I - homework - English - must

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I _____ (have) got any grapes.
- I'm good at _____ (play) football.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

would you like some oranges

8 Write a text of THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A famous sportsperson

Guiding questions

- Who is this famous sportsperson?
- Why is this sportsperson famous?



A- Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأحتر الاجابة الصحيحة:



1. I was at school with my _____ . (brother - classmate - teacher)
2. It started to get _____ . (dark - black - blue)
3. I saw a storm and it was _____ . (beautiful - frightening - fast)

B- Language Functions

Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة

sneakers - buy - swimming - tennis

- Are you ready, Mariam? We need to _____ a lot of things in town.
- Yes, I'm ready. Remember I need some new _____ .
- Mom Oh, yes, for your _____ lessons next week.
- Mariam Do we have time to go _____ today, Mom?
- Mom Not today, Mariam.

C- Reading Comprehension

Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. We can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't healthy for us, so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun with your friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What types of food are healthy?

2. Why riding bikes is good for a healthier life?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. We can include fruit and _____ in our meals. (cola - salad - vegetables)

4. Junk food _____ healthy. (are - isn't - is)

5. Riding bikes means _____ pollution. (less - more - no)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good at _____ football.

☐ a play

☐ b played

☒ c playing

أنا جيد في كرة القدم

2. _____ had to go to medical schools.

☐ a Doctors

☐ b Scribes

☒ c Traders

3. She went to town _____ a dress.

☐ a buying

☐ b buy

☒ c to buy

4. Chicken and fish are _____.

☐ a unhealthy

☐ b healthy

☒ c vegetables

5. A football _____ is a place where we play football.

☐ a court

☐ b cinema

☒ c pitch

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. raining - Was - it?

2. was - It - a very - day - hot.

3. I - a suit - wear - do - to - karate.

4. an - Swimming - sport - is - awesome

5. has - tree - a mango - Fareeda - her - garden - in.

Tests

20

A- Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأحضر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. People play football on _____.

courts - pitches - arenas

2. A football team has _____ players.

twelve - eleven - eighteen

3. The winning team scores the most _____.

matches - goals - times

B- Language Functions



Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة

grapes - would - some - buying

Seller : Hello, _____ you like some bananas?

Ali : No, thank you. I would like some _____.

Seller : How about _____ some oranges?

Ali : Yes, I would like _____.

C- Reading Comprehension



Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

I'm Seif. I'm in grade five. I live with my family in Cairo. My school uniform is a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. When it is cold, we can wear our blue sweaters.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Which grade is Seif in?

2. What are the colors of the uniform?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Seif is years old. (five - ten - six)
4. The girls wear a blue (trousers - socks - skirt)
5. When it is cold, they wear blue (skirts - sweaters - snorts)

D- Vocabulary and Structures



Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I was traveling by to the island.
☐ a boat ☐ foot ☐ metro
2. Tourism gives for local people.
☐ food ☐ jobs ☐ sports
3. Aser is good at tennis.
☐ play ☐ playing ☐ plays
4. I had a bad dream, it was
☐ a nightmare ☐ a greenhouse ☐ an emission
5. Basel take his bag last week.
☐ don't ☐ doesn't ☐ didn't



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. went - I - my - to - sleep - bedroom - to.
2. He - with - in - lived - town - wife - his.
3. Mexico - hats - wear - People - in
4. wearing - Soha - a - is - dress - spotted.
5. coffee - like - you - do - some?



Test 1

A- Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختار الاجابة الصحيحة:



1. We wear a _____ sleeved white shirt. (long - short - small)
2. The girls wear a _____ shirt. (gray - blue - white)
3. When it is _____, we wear sweaters. (hot - sunny - cold)

B- Language Functions

Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

chocolate - eat - healthy - favorite

- Dina : What's your _____ food, Fareeda?
- Fareeda : It's _____.
- Dina : I love chocolate, too. But it isn't _____, is it?
- Fareeda : I think it's OK to _____ a little.

C- Reading Comprehension

Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016, she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal. Hedaya is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who is Hedaya Malak?

2. When did Hedaya Malak begin practicing taekwondo?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Hedaya Malak was born in (1991 - 1992 - 1993)

4. Raja Garmash won the ... medal in 2016. (gold - silver - bronze)

5. Hedaya Malak is a very ... person. (bad - kind - dangerous)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: احتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She went to town to ... a dress.

☐ a buy ☐ b buys ☐ c buying

2. Alexandria is a

☐ a town ☐ b city ☐ c village

3. You walk on the grass.

☐ a can ☐ b mustn't ☐ c must

4. In a heat wave, we must stay in the

☐ a shade ☐ b sun ☐ c storm

5. Nada wants ... for dessert.

☐ a onions ☐ b chocolate ☐ c tomatoes

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - like - weather - the - ... ?

2. have - good - you - Did - a - trip?

3. a racket - Ahmed - to - tennis - bought - play.

4. have - we - in - sports - do - Egypt - What?

5. play - ... - games - computer - the - at - weekend.

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

lungs - bad - emissions - outside

I can't breathe well because the air is black and toxic. We can't go **a** .
 There are too many cars. There are too many **b** from cars. It's dangerous
 for children's **c** . We can't go to school because the air is **d** .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I always wear my swimming in the sea.

- a** goggles **b** pool **c** pitch **d** court

2. She is wearing on her hands.

- a** belts **b** gloves **c** sunglasses **d** boots

3. The makes shoes and bags.

- a** dentist **b** pianist **c** shoemaker **d** dressmaker

4. Ancient Egyptian made beautiful paintings and jewelry.

- a** scribes **b** craftsmen **c** traders **d** doctors

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because of the pollution that planes cause. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
☐ a tourism ☐ b eco-tourism ☐ c ecosystem ☐ d system
- Eco-tourists don't like to travel by
☐ a trains ☐ b cars ☐ c planes ☐ d buses
- Eco-tourists stay in, local hotels.
☐ a big ☐ b tiny ☐ c huge ☐ d small
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
☐ a eco-tourists ☐ b local people ☐ c hotels ☐ d houses

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form in the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

- sports - good - What - at - are - you?
☐ a What good sports you are at?
☐ b What sports are you good at?
☐ c What you are good at sports?
- favorite - is - My - mango - fruit.
☐ a My favorite fruit is mango.
☐ b My mango fruit is favorite.
☐ c My fruit is mango favorite.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

<input type="radio"/> a - After the zoo, I went back home. - Then, I went to bed. - Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals.	<input type="radio"/> b - Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals. - Then, I went to bed - After the zoo, I went back home.
<input type="radio"/> c - Yesterday, I went to the zoo. - I saw animals. - After the zoo, I went back home. - Then, I went to bed.	<input type="radio"/> d - I saw animals. - Then, I went to bed. - After the zoo, I went back home. - Yesterday, I went to the zoo.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات
الخاصة بكتاب **Bit Bit**

Test 1 on Units 1-2

My sister Laila likes sports very much. Her favorite sport is basketball. She practices it in the club. She is too tall. She can throw the ball into the basket. She wins the match with her friends against the other team.

Test 2 on Units 1-2

My favorite sport is karate. I practiced karate at the age of five. I always go to the club with my father. I wear a white suit. I practice hard to win medals. I want to be healthy so I can do karate well.

Test 1 on Units 3-4

Today we will travel to Alexandria. I help my mother to pack our suitcases. I will take my favorite swimming shorts and T-shirts. My brother Emad will take his sunglasses because it's hot and sunny in Alexandria. My mother will need her dresses because they are comfortable to wear. It will be a good holiday.

Test 2 on Units 3-4

Hatem lives in a village in Aswan. Every Friday he rides a felucca with his father. He enjoyed the view of the Nile. The sunsets are fantastic. He can see lots of statues in the Aswan Museum. He visits Aswan Botanical Garden. It is amazing.

Test 1 on Units 5-6

My brother Ahmed is a computer programmer. He likes his job very much. When he was young, he loved playing computer games. He enjoys solving problems and working with other people. He doesn't like working outside. He works in an office in a big building in Giza.

Test 2 on Units 5-6

Egypt has a special climate. It's always sunny and hot in summer. In winter, it's cold and sometimes rains. It never snows in Egypt. By the sea, it rains a lot more. So, Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. The Nile is important because we can get water from the south. This water helps us to grow our crops and drink lots of water.

General Tests

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية

1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Ali is healthy. His favorite food is mangoes. He doesn't like chocolate, it is unhealthy. He likes chicken, fish and rice. He likes playing sports with his brother.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية

2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. There were many jobs. Farmers planted many crops. Traders traveled up and down the sea. Scribes knew how to read and write.

3 محافظة القليوبية - إدارة طوخ

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friends and I went to Aswan. We went there last month. We visited the Elephantine Island. It's one of the greatest island in the River Nile.

4 محافظة المتوفية - إدارة السادات

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

It's spring. The sun is shining. There are a lot of animals and insects. The bees are buzzing. The ants are working. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Finally, he is hungry and he can't have any food.

5 محافظة الغربية - إدارة السنطة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Most people worked as farmers. Egyptian craftsmen were skillful. Everyone respected Ancient Egyptian craftsmen.

6 محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I was very hot yesterday because there was a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high. We opened the windows at night when it was cool. Our mom made lemonade to cool us down.

7 محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hamza's father is a tour guide. Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guides need to be friendly. Tourism is important for our economy, so tourists should have a good holiday.

8 محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Hany likes sports. He loves watching football matches. He's very good at playing football, but he is bad at playing squash.

9 محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali went to Dahab last week. He was traveling by bus. He saw many tourists there. They enjoyed the clean air and the sea. They were sad to leave.

10 محافظة الأسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Sara invited Marwa to visit Alexandria. Marwa and Sara are going to the beach. It's cold in Alexandria in winter. Sara doesn't have a jacket.

11 محافظة مطروح - إدارة مطروح

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Dina likes to eat healthy food. Fish is her favorite food. Sometimes Dina likes to eat chocolate, but it is unhealthy to eat much. She exercises and plays well every day.

12 محافظة بنى سويف - إدارة ببا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Soha is bad at playing handball, but she is good at tennis. She is good at making cakes. Soha has a brother. His name is Omar. He's fourteen years old. He is bad at tennis.

13 محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali loves playing squash. He is very good at it because he can move fast. Ali plays this sport in a small court with walls all around. He has a small green racket. He hits the ball hard with it. Ali sometimes plays tennis. He plays tennis in a big court.

Listening

14 محافظة سوهاج - إدارة أخميم

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Noha is a vet. She works with animals. Sometimes she works inside and people bring their animals to her. She goes to people's houses or farms.

15 محافظة قنا - إدارة قوص

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My favorite sport is football. We play this sport on the pitch. I play it in a team. I'm very good at it.

16 محافظة الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Elephantine Island is a fantastic place to visit. It's in Aswan. Egyptians and tourists visit it. It's a beautiful island.

17 محافظة البحر الأحمر - إدارة سفاجا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

The galabeya is a traditional Egyptian clothing. It's made from cotton. The galabeya has pockets, but they are hidden. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned.

18 محافظة الوادي الجديد - إدارة الدخيلة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My brother Sami went on a school trip to Alexandria. Alexandria is a beautiful city. Sami went to Alexandria by train. It was an exciting trip.

19 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I was at school with my classmates. It started to get dark. We went outside then I saw a storm and it was frightening.

20 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

People play football on pitches. There are eleven players in a football team. The winning team scores the most goals.

21 امتحان الأزهر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My school uniform is really smart. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue shirt. When it is cold, we wear sweaters.